

**CHINESE
BASIC COURSE**

TEXTBOOK

**Module 2
Lessons 7-12**

February 1984

Revised August 1989

**DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE
FOREIGN LANGUAGE CENTER**

PREFACE

Abbreviations used in the glossary of this module:

A: Adverb	MA: Movable Adverb	S/SUB: Subject
ADJ: Adjective	N: Noun	SP: Specifier
AV: Auxiliary Verb	NU: Number	SV: Stative Verb
BF: Bound Form	O: Object	Tt: Tàitai
C/CONJ: Conjunction	P: Particle	TW: Time Word
CV: Co-Verb	PH: Phrase	Tz: Tóngzhì
EV: Equative Verb	PN: Pronoun	V: Verb
EX: Exclamation	PT: Pattern	VO: Verb Object
IE: Idiomatic Expression	PW: Place Word	Xj: Xiǎojiě
M: Measure	QW: Question Word	Xs: Xiansheng

FUNCTIONAL OBJECTIVES

At the end of the module you will be able to appropriately use Chinese to:

1. Ask and answer questions or exchange information about traveling.
2. Ask and answer questions about whether or not some action has been completed.
3. Ask and answer questions about your or someone else's ability to perform some actions.
4. Ask and give the price of some article.
5. Ask and tell when an event will take place.
6. Distinguish between being capable of, knowing how to and being permitted to.
7. Inquire about renting furniture and/or an apartment.
8. Inquire as to the suitability (age or value) of items for rent or purchase.

9. Link a conversational statement using nàme, "in that case."
10. Quote price per unit.
11. Seek approval or disapproval of an action.
12. Specify a time when something has happened or will happen.
13. State fondness/love for something or someone.
14. State likes or dislikes of objects and people.
15. State that you must do something.
16. State the idea that one has the ability/capacity to do something and sometimes even to do it to excess.
17. State what you or another person are presently doing.
18. State your intention to do something.
19. Understand and be able to apply the Chinese monetary system.
20. Understand the difference between simplified characters and full-form characters.
21. Within vocabulary limits, ask and answer questions about when something will happen or has happened.

Note: With this module, the reading and writing portion begins. You will be learning to read and write the characters presented in each lesson up to the 80th lesson. Thereafter you will only be responsible for recognizing and reading the given characters. The character portion of the course is given in a separate book.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

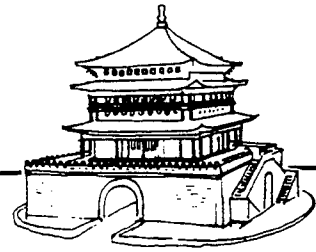
Preface	iii
Functional Objectives	iii
Lesson 7	
Introduction and Objectives	1
Glossary	2
Communicative Exchanges	5
Duì huà	11
Summary	13
Drills I.....	14
Drills II.....	17
Dictation Exercises.....	21
Communication Exercises.....	22
Translation Exercises.....	25
Enrichment.....	28
Lesson 8	
Introduction and Objectives	29
Glossary	30
Communicative Exchanges	34
Duì huà	38
Summary	40
Drills I	41
Drills II	45
Dictation Exercises	50
Communication Exercises	51
Translation Exercises	54
Enrichment	57
Lesson 9	
Introduction and Objectives	58
Glossary	59
Communicative Exchanges	63
Duì huà	67

Summary	69
Drills I	71
Drills II	74
Dictation Exercises	78
Communication Exercises	79
Translation Exercises	83
Enrichment	86
Lesson 10	
Introduction and Objectives	87
Glossary	88
Communicative Exchanges	91
Duihuà	95
Summary	97
Drills I	98
Drills II	102
Dictation Exercises	106
Communication Exercises	107
Translation Exercises	110
Enrichment	113
Lesson 11	
Introduction and Objectives	114
Glossary	115
Communicative Exchanges	119
Duihuà	124
Summary	126
Drills I	128
Drills II	130
Dictation Exercises	136
Communication Exercises	137
Translation Exercises	142
Enrichment	145
Lesson 12	
Introduction and Objectives	146
Glossary	147
Communicative Exchanges	152

Duì huà	158
Summary	160
Drills I	162
Drills II	166
Dictation Exercises	171
Communication Exercises	172
Translation Exercises	175
Enrichment	178
 Module Grammar Study	 179
 Solution to Crossword Puzzles	 191
 Module Glossary	 197
 Workbook	
Introduction	204
 Homework Assignment (Tear-out Sheets)	
Lesson 7	205
Lesson 8	208
Lesson 9	211
Lesson 10	214
Lesson 11	216
Lesson 12	219
 Listening Comprehension Practice	
Lesson 7	223
Lesson 8	227
Lesson 9	232
Lesson 10	236
Lesson 11	239
Lesson 12	242

LESSON 7

INTRODUCTION



This lesson deals with:

- The monetary patterns.
- Asking and quoting a price.
- Amount of price per unit.
- Reduplicated verbs.
- Noun clause of a general nature.
- Transposed object.
- QW jī used as an indefinite.
- Necessity of using SP with PN or name to establish a location for an individual.
- The relationship between verbs and auxiliary verbs.
- SP-M, SP-M+N, PN+SP-Nu-M+N patterns.



Dàlù chū de shū

OBJECTIVES



Upon completion of this lesson you will be able to:

- a. Ask and give the price of an article.
- b. Understand and be able to apply the Chinese monetary system.
- c. Quote price per unit.
- d. Understand the difference between simplified characters and full-form characters.
- e. Express the intent or desire to do something.

GLOSSARY



- | | | | |
|--------------|-------------------------------------|--------|---|
| 1. běn | 本 | M: | volume (of books) |
| 2. chū(bǎn) | 出(版) | V: | to publish |
| | Wǒ yào mǎi yìběn Táiwān chū de shū. | | (I want to buy a book published in Táiwān.) |
| 3. dàlù/Dàlù | 大陆 | N: | continent, mainland/Mainland China |
| | Zhōngguó Dàlù 中国大陆 | | (Mainland China) |
| 4. dìtú | 地图 | N: | map (M: <u>zhāng</u>) |
| 5. duōshao | 多少 | QW/NU: | how many, how much |
| | Zhèiběn shū mài duōshao qián? | | (How much does this book sell for?) |
| 6. guì | 贵 | SV: | to be expensive |
| 7. hé | 和 | C: | and |
| 8. huì | 会 | AV: | can (know how to) |
| | Wǒ huì kàn dìtú. | | (I know how to read maps.) |
| | Wǒ búhuì yòng máobǐ. | | (I don't know how to use a brush-pen.) |
| 9. mǎi | 买 | V: | to buy |
| 10. mài | 卖 | V: | to sell, to sell for |
| | Tā mài shénme? | | (What is he selling?) |
| 11. máobǐ | 毛笔 | N: | (Chinese) brush-pen (M: <u>zhǐ</u>) |
| a. fěnbǐ | 粉笔 | N: | chalk (M: <u>zhǐ</u>) |
| b. gāngbǐ | 钢笔 | N: | pen, fountain pen (Lit. steel pen) (M: <u>zhǐ</u>) |
| c. qiānbǐ | 铅笔 | N: | lead pencil (M: <u>zhǐ</u>) |
| d. yuánzhūbǐ | 圆珠笔 | N: | ball-point pen (Lit. round bead pen) (M: <u>zhǐ</u>) |

12. piányi 便宜 SV: to be inexpensive
 Qiānbǐ piányi, gāngbǐ guì. (Pencils are inexpensive; fountain pens are expensive.)
13. qián 钱 N: money
 duōshao qián? (How much money? How much?)
- a. -fēn (qián) 一分 (钱) N: cents
 b. -máo (qián) 一毛 (钱) N: dimes
 c. -kuài (qián) 一块 (钱) N: dollars
14. shūdiàn 书店 N: bookstore (M: jiā)
 a. diàn 店 BF: store
15. Táiwān 台湾 N: Taiwan (Formosa)
16. xiǎng 想 V/AV: to think about or of, to long for, to miss/to intend to, would like to
 Wǒ xiǎng jiā (I am homesick.)
 Wǒ xiǎng tā bù zhīdào. (I don't think that he knows.)
 Wǒ yě xiǎng mǎi fěnbǐ. (I also intend/would like to buy chalk.)
- a. xiǎng(yi)xiǎng 想 (一) 想 V: to think it over
 Nǐ xiǎng(yi)xiǎng, guì búguì? (Think it over, is it expensive or not?)
17. xiě 写 V: to write
 Shéi huì xiě Zhōngguó zì? (Who knows how to write Chinese characters?)
18. yào 要 V/AV: to want/to want to
 Wǒ yào qián. (I want money.)
 Wǒ yào xiě Zhōngguó zì. (I want to write Chinese characters.)
19. yìgòng 一共 MA: altogether, in all (total)
 Yìgòng yǒu duōshao? (How much is there altogether?)
 Wǒmen yìgòng yǒu wǔkuài qián. (In all, we have \$5.00.)

- | | | |
|-------------------|----------------------------|---|
| 20. yòng | 用 | V: to use, to employ
(I don't know how to use a dictionary.) |
| | Wǒ búhuì yòng zìdiǎn. | |
| a. yǒuyòng | 有用 | SV: to be useful
(That dictionary is very useful.) |
| | Nèiběn zìdiǎn hěn yǒuyòng. | |
| b. méiyòng | 没用 | SV: to be useless
(This dictionary is useless.) |
| | Zhèiběn zìdiǎn méiyòng. | |
| 21. zhāng | 张 | M: for maps, paper, tables, desks, etc. |
| 22. zì | 字 | N: (Chinese) characters, ideographs |
| a. fántǐzì | 繁体字 | N: full-form characters |
| b. jiǎntǐzì | 简体字 | N: short-form (simplified) characters |
| 23. zìdiǎn | 字典 | N: dictionary (M: běn) |
| a. Hànyīng zìdiǎn | 汉英字典 | N: Chinese-English dictionary |
| b. Yīnghàn zìdiǎn | 英汉字典 | N: English-Chinese dictionary |

OLD WORDS WITH NEW MEANINGS/FUNCTIONS

- | | | |
|---------|---------------------------|--|
| 24. jǐ | 几 | NU: a few, some, several
(How many friends do you have?)
(I have several friends.)
(I want to buy a few fountain pens.) |
| | Nǐ yǒu jǐge* péngyou? | |
| | Wǒ yǒu jǐge péngyou. | |
| | Wǒ xiǎng mǎi jǐzhǐ ǎngbǐ. | |
| 25. jiā | 家 | M: (for hotels, restaurants, shops, etc.)
(This hotel is very large.) |
| | Zhèijiā fàndiàn hěn dà. | |

* In jǐge, "how many," the stress is on the first syllable.

COMMUNICATIVE EXCHANGES



LESSON 7

Mǎi Shū - Buying Books

Two DLI students are on a field trip in San Francisco's Chinatown.

FRAME 1

1 A: Zhèr yǒu yìjiā Zhōngguó
shūdiàn. Wǒmen kànkàn tāmen
mǎi shénme shū.

There is a Chinese bookstore here. Let's take a look and see what books they are selling.

2 B: Nǐ kàn, dōu shì Táiwān
chū de shū. Dōu shì fántǐzì.
Nǐ xiǎng mǎi shénme?

Look! All these books were published in Taiwan. They are all long-form characters. What do you intend to buy?

Notes:

1. Reduplicated Verbs. Kànkàn, "take a look," is an abbreviation of kànyìkàn, "take one look." Chinese verbs are sometimes repeated, with or without yì between them. This duplication tends to give them a more casual meaning. Xiǎngxiǎng, "think it over," is another example. As you can see, the repeated verb loses its tone.

Subject-Verb-Object Pattern. The sentence Wǒmen kànkàn tāmen mǎi shénme shū is a Subject-Verb-Object pattern.

S V O
Wǒmen kànkàn tāmen mǎi shénme shū.

The object above can also be a S-V-O pattern in its own right:

S V O
Tāmen mǎi shénme shū?

What books are they selling?

2. Modification of Nouns by Clauses with -de. The phrase Táiwān chū de shū, "books published in Taiwan," is an example of the modification of nouns by clauses with the particle -de. There are three basic parts:

1	2	3
Modifying Clauses	de	Noun

- | | | |
|-----------|----------------|---------------------------------------|
| a. Táiwān | chū de shū | books (which are) published in Táiwān |
| b. Tāmen | xiě de zì | the characters (which) they wrote |
| c. wǒ | yòng de zìdiǎn | the dictionary (which) I use |

The components within the modifying clause may be different: subject+verb (as in example a, b, and c), and verb+object (as in examples d, e, and f.)

- | | | |
|----------------------------|--|---|
| d. mài shū de rén | | the person (who is) selling books |
| e. yòng zìdiǎn de xuésheng | | the students (who are) using dictionaries |
| f. mǎi dìtú de xiānsheng | | the gentleman (who is) buying a map. |

In examples a, b, and c, the nouns are inanimate objects, and -de is translated as "the...which." In examples, d, e, and f the nouns are individuals, and -de is translated as "the...who." Remember this as a rule of thumb. Note that the English translation picks up from the end, then goes back to the beginning of the sentence.

Clausal Expressions Becoming Nouns. In certain frequently used expressions where the noun modified is understood, the modifying clause plus -de will itself become a noun as in (d) above. Compare:

màishū de rén	the person selling books
màishūde	bookseller

Xiǎng Followed by a Noun. In this case xiǎng is a verb meaning "to think about," or "to think of." Sometimes it is used in the sense of "missing," "longing for," or "being homesick."

Tā xiǎng nǐ.	She misses you.
Tā xiǎng jiā.	He is homesick.
Wǒ bùxiǎng tā.	I don't miss her.

Xiǎng Followed by a Sentence. When followed by a sentence, this verb means "to think (that) ..."

Wǒ xiǎng tā xìng Wú.	I think (that) his surname is Wú.
Wǒ bùxiǎng mǎi shū.	I don't want to buy a book.

Xiǎng Followed by a Verb. In this case xiǎng becomes an auxiliary verb meaning "to think of doing something" or "intend to do something." Sometimes it is used interchangeably with yào. As an auxiliary verb, it must precede the main verb of the sentence. Compare:

Wǒ yào mǎi (yì)běn shū.

I want to buy a book.

Wǒ xiǎng mǎi (yì)běn shū

I intend to buy a book.

FRAME 2

3 A: Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yìbēn xiǎo zìdiǎn. Tāmen zhèr yǒu Hànyīng zìdiǎn, hěn piányi.

I intend to buy a small dictionary. They (here) have Chinese-English dictionaries. They are very inexpensive.

4 B: Duōshao qián yìbēn?

How much is it for a copy?

5 A: Zhèibēn yíkuài jiǔmáowǔ. Bú guì.

This one is \$1.95. It's not expensive.

Notes

3. Tāmen zhèr "here, at their place" is a common compound form used as a place word. Other examples are nimen nèr, "there, at your place;" women zhèr, "here, at our place;" and tā jiějie nèr, "over there, at his older sister's place."

Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn, "Chinese-English dictionary." Hàn is the name of a dynasty (206 B.C. - 220 A.D.), the earliest period when the Chinese came into contact with Western nations. Since then Hàn has been used to refer to the Chinese race. Example: Hànrén, "the Chinese race."

4. Asking for prices. The sentence Duōshao qián yìbēn? "How much it is for a copy?" is one way to ask about or give a price. Others are:

Zhèige mài duōshao qián?

How much money does this sell for?

Zhèige shì duōshao qián?

How much money is this?

Zhèige duōshao qián?

How much [is] this? (verb left out)

The price per unit pattern in Chinese can be either the unit first and then the price, or the price first and then the unit:

liǎngběn wǔkuài qián
wǔkuài qián liǎngběn

two copies for \$5.00
\$5.00 for two copies

Pronoun-Specifier-Number-Measure-Noun Pattern

PN	SP	NU	M	N	
		sānběn			three volumes
		sānběn	shū		three books
	nèi	sānběn	shū?		which three books?
	nèi	sānběn	shū		those three books
wǒ	nèi	sānběn	shū		those three books of mine
tāmen	nèi	sānběn	shū		those three books of theirs

Frame 3

6	C: Wǒmen zhèrde shū dōu shì Dàlù chū de. Yòng <u>jiǎntīzì</u> . Wǒmen yě yǒu hǎo <u>dìtú</u> .	All of our books here were published on the Mainland (China). Simplified characters are used. We also have nice maps.
7	B: Wǒ yào mǎi yìzhāng Zhōngguó dìtú. Duōshao qián yìzhāng?	I want to buy a map of China. How much is it for each copy?
8	C: Zhèizhāng dà dìtú mài liǎngkuài qīmáowǔ(fēn qián). Zhèr yǒu yìběn <u>jiǎntīzì(de) Yīng-Hàn zìdiǎn</u> . Nín yào buyào?	This large map sells for \$2.75. Here is an English-Chinese Dictionary in simplified characters. Do you want it?
9	B: Dìtú hé zìdiǎn wǒ dōu yào. <u>Yìgòng</u> duōshao qián?	I want both the map and the dictionary. How much are they altogether?
10	C: Zìdiǎn shíjiǔkuài jiǔmáosì. Dìtú liǎngkuài qīmáowǔ. <u>Yìgòng èrshìèrkuài liùmáo jiǔfēn qián</u> .	The dictionary is \$19.94. The map is \$2.75. Altogether \$22.69.

Notes

6. Cultural Background. When comparing books published in Taiwan with those published on the Mainland of China, notice the difference between the full-form characters and the simplified

ones. However, the full-form characters still used on the Mainland are the same as those used in Taiwan. The first group of officially adopted simplified characters on the Mainland was announced in 1956 by the Language Reform Committee.

Caution. Under no circumstances can simplified characters (jiǎntǐzì) and Pinyin be used in Taiwan; nor may such materials be imported into Taiwan.

8. Liǎngkuài qīmáowǔ (fēn qián), "\$2.75." There are three possible ways to say this:

liǎngkuài qīmáowǔ	two dollars, seventy-five
liǎngkuài qīmáowǔfēn	two dollars, seventy-five cents
liǎngkuài qīmáowǔfēn qián	two dollars, seventy-five cents

9. Transposed Objects: The sentence Dìtú hé zìdiǎn wǒ dōu yào, "I want both the map and dictionary," literally means "map and dictionary, I want both of them." This is an inverted sentence with transposed objects dìtú hé zìdiǎn at the beginning of the sentence. The dōu, refers to the transposed objects dìtú hé zìdiǎn, and not to the subject wǒ.

Gēge hé jiějie wǒ dōu yǒu.	I have both older brothers and older sisters.
Máobǐ hé qiānbǐ wǒ dōu mǎi.	I will buy both a brush pen and a pencil.
Fántǐzì hé jiǎntǐzì wǒ dōu huì xiě.	I can write both long-form and short-form characters.

Yìgòng, "Altogether," is a movable adverb. Like other movable adverbs, it can be placed before or after the subject.

Yìgòng wǒmen yǒu sānkuài qián.	Altogether we have three dollars (between us).
Wǒmen yìgòng yǒu sānkuài qián.	We altogether have three dollars.

FRAME 4

- | | | |
|----|-------------------------------------|--|
| 11 | B: Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yìzhī máobǐ. | I would like to buy a brush-pen. |
| 12 | C: Nín huì xiě Zhōngguó zìma? | Can you write Chinese characters? |
| 13 | B: Huì. | Yes, I can. |
| 14 | C: Nín huì xiě duōshao Zhōngguó zì? | How many Chinese characters can you write? |

Frame 4 (Continued)

- | | |
|--|---|
| 15 B: Wǒ huì xiě <u>jībǎige</u> Zhōngguó zì. | I can write several hundred Chinese characters. |
|--|---|

Notes

12. Nǐn huì xiě Zhōngguó zì ma? "Can you write Chinese characters?" No rudeness is intended in this question.

15. Another Use of Jǐ-. Wǒ huì xiě jībǎige Zhōngguó zì, "I can write several hundred Chinese Characters." This is the same jǐ-, "how many," you learned in Lesson 5. Here it is used as "some," "several," or "a few" (usually fewer than ten). Had the speaker used jǐge instead of duōshǎo in question 14 it might have been impolite, implying that the foreigner could not possibly write more than a few.

-jǐ carries the same meaning when it follows a unit of number. Examples: sānqiānjǐ "three thousand and some," wǔkuàijǐ "\$5.00 and some" (usually between \$5.00 and \$6.00).

对话

FRAME 1

- | | | |
|---|-----------------------------|---|
| 1 | A: 这儿有一家中国书店。我们看看他们卖什么书。 | There is a Chinese bookstore here. Let's take a look and see what books they are selling. |
| 2 | B: 你看! 都是台湾出的书。都是繁体字。你想买什么? | Look! All these books were printed in Táiwan. They are all long-form characters. What do you intend to buy? |

FRAME 2

- | | | |
|---|-----------------------------|--|
| 3 | A: 我想买一本小字典。他们这儿有汉英字典, 很便宜。 | I think I'll buy a small dictionary. They (here) have Chinese-English dictionaries. They are very inexpensive. |
| 4 | B: 多少钱一本? | How much is it for a copy? |
| 5 | A: 这本一块九毛五。不贵。 | This one is \$1.95. It's not expensive. |

FRAME 3

- | | | |
|---|-------------------------------|---|
| 6 | C: 我们这儿的书都是大陆出的。用简体字。我们也有好地图。 | All of our books here were published on the Mainland (China). Simplified characters are used. We also have nice maps. |
| 7 | B: 我要买一张中国地图。多少钱一张? | I want to buy a map of China. How much is it for each copy? |

FRAME 3 (CONTINUED)

- | | | |
|----|--|---|
| 8 | C: 这张大地图卖两块七毛五(分钱)。这儿有一本简体字(的)英汉字典。你要不要? | This large map sells for \$2.75. Here is a simplified character English-Chinese dictionary. Do you want it? |
| 9 | B: 地图和字典我都要。一共多少钱? | I want both the map and dictionary. How much are they altogether? |
| 10 | C: 字典十九块九毛四。地图两块七毛五。一共二十二块六毛九分钱。 | The dictionary is \$19.94. The map is \$2.75. Altogether \$22.69. |

FRAME 4

- | | | |
|----|---------------|---|
| 11 | B: 我想买一枝毛笔。 | I would like to buy a brushpen. |
| 12 | C: 您会写中国字吗? | Can you write Chinese characters? |
| 13 | B: 会。 | Yes, I can. |
| 14 | C: 您会写多少中国字? | How many Chinese characters can you write? |
| 15 | B: 我会写几百个中国字。 | I can write several hundred Chinese characters. |

SUMMARY



Frame 1

a. A reduplicated verb lends a note of casualness or a mild imperative to a statement or question. Examples: Kàn(yi)kàn, "to take a look," and xiǎng(yi)xiǎng, "to think it over."

b. The particle -de can be used at the end of a phrase and before a noun. In this case, the phrase modifies the noun.

mài dìtú de rén ... the person selling maps ...
Wǒ xiě de zì ... the characters I wrote ...

c. Xiǎng can be either used as a verb or as an auxiliary verb. As a verb it can be followed by a noun and means "to think about," or "to think of." When followed by a sentence it means "to think [that] ..." As an auxiliary verb, it precedes the main verb of the sentence and has the meaning of "to plan," "to wish," or "to think about doing something."

Frame 2

a. When a personal noun or pronoun is followed by words such as zhèr or nèr, the noun or pronoun becomes a place word.

tāmen zhèr at their place here
Wǒ fùqin nèr at my father's place there

b. The price of something can be asked in different ways:

X mài duōshao qián? How much does X sell for?
X shì duōshao qián? How much is X?
X duoshao qián? How much for X?

Frame 3

a. The object of a verb is sometimes transposed to the beginning of a sentence: Měiguó qián, wǒ yǒu, "I have American money." This transposition is obligatory when dou is used and refers to the object, as in Shu hé dìtú, wǒ dou mǎi, "I'm buying both books and maps."

Frame 4

Ji- "several" or "a few" and -ji "and several" or "and some" are two indefinite numbers. Examples:

jībǎige "several hundred" jikuàiqián "several dollars"
sānbǎiji "300 and some" wǔkuàiji "\$5 and some"

DRILLS I



A. Transformation Drill: Change the teacher's question into a choice-type question.

(T) Xiànzài Shànghǎi de shū-diàn mài Éguó chū de shū ma?

(Do any bookstores in Shanghai sell Russian publications now?)

(S) Xiànzài Shànghǎi de shū-diàn mài bú mài Éguó chū de shū?

(Don't any bookstores in Shanghai sell Russian publications now?)

B. Cue Question and Response Drill: Using the first part of the cue, student 1 asks the question. Student 2 then gives the answer using the second part of the cue.

(T) Yuánzhūbǐ - 99¢
(ball-point pen)

(S1) Zhèizhī yuánzhūbǐ (shì) duoshao qián?

(How much is this ball-point pen?)

(S2) Zhèizhī (shì) jiǔmáojiǔ.
This one is 99¢.)

C. Transformation Drill: Change the teacher's sentence into a sentence with transposed object:

(T) Wǒ yào dìtú, wǒ bú yào zìdiǎn.

(I want the map; I don't want the dictionary.)

(S) Dìtú wǒ yào, zìdiǎn wǒ bú yào.

(The map I want; the dictionary, I don't want.)

D. Transformation Drill: Change the teacher's sentence into a sentence with dōu and two transposed objects.

(T) Wǒ yào dìtú hé zìdiǎn.
(I want the map and the dictionary.)

(S) Dìtú hé zìdiǎn wǒ dōu yào.
(The map and the dictionary, I want both of them.)

E. Transformation Drill: Convert the teacher's statement with the number jǐ, "several," into a question with the question-word duōshao, "how many."

(T) Wǒ jiāli yǒu jǐge rén.
(There are several people
in my family.)

(S) Nǐ jiāli yǒu duōshao rén?
(How many people are
there in your family?)

F. Response Drill: In response to the teacher's statement, give the total amount of items or number of people as cued, and use the word yìgòng, "altogether," as shown in the example.

(T) Dìtú sānkuài, zìdiǎn wǔ-
kuài. cue: \$8.00
(The map is \$3.00, the
dictionary is \$5.00.)

(S) Dìtú hé zìdiǎn yìgòng bā-
kuài.
(The map and the dictio-
nary altogether are \$8.00.)

G. Transformation Drill: Change the teacher's descriptive statement (without shì) into an equational statement with shì.

(T) Zhèizhī bǐ hěn piányi.
(This pen is very inex-
pensive.)

(S) Zhèi shì yìzhī hěn piányi
de bǐ.
(This is a very inexpen-
sive pen.)

H. Transformation Drill: Add Wǒ kànkàn "Let me take a look" or some other appropriate combination to the teacher's question to change it into a casual statement.

(T) Tāmen mài shénme shū?
(What books are they sell-
ing?)

(S) Wǒ kànkàn tāmen mài shén-
me shū.
(Let me take a look and
see what books they are sell-
ing.)
Choice: Wǒ kànkàn, Nǐ kànkàn,
Wǒmen kànkàn, (Qǐng)
tā kànkàn.

I. Transformation Drill: Add wǒ xiǎng, "I think (but I am not sure)," to the beginning of the teacher's statement.

(T) Tāmen mài Rìběn chū de shū. (They sell books published in Japan.)	(S) Wǒ xiǎng tāmen mài Rìběn chū de shū. (I think they sell books published in Japan.)
--	---

J. Transformation Drill: Add nǐ xiǎngxiang, "You think it over," to the beginning of the teacher's question.

(T) Tā yào jiǎntīzì de zìdiǎn ma? (Does she want a simplified characters dictionary?)	(S) Nǐ xiǎngxiang tā yào jiǎntīzì de zìdiǎn ma? (You think it over; does she want a simplified characters dictionary?)
--	---

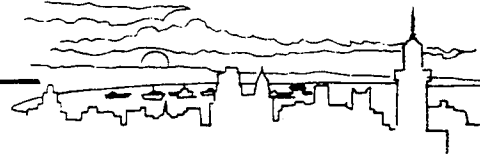
K. Transformation Drill. Change the teacher's statement into a modifying clause with the particle -de.

(T) Nèige háizi mài qiānbǐ. (That child sells pencils.)	(S) Nèige háizi mài de qiānbǐ... (The pencils that the child is selling ...)
--	---

L. Transformation Drill. Add the particle -de to the underlined clause and rearrange the teacher's statement. In the new statement, the clause modifies the subject.

(T) Xuésheng <u>mǎi shū</u> . (The student is buying books.)	(S) <u>Mǎishū de</u> xuésheng (The student [who is] buying books ...)
---	---

DRILLS II



A. Ask someone if he is going to buy this article or that article.

EX: Nǐ mǎi Zhōngguó shū háishi mǎi Měiguó shū?

PN Mǎi SV/N háishi mǎi SV/N

	Zhōngguó dītú		Měiguó dītú?
	dà zìdiǎn		xiǎo zìdiǎn?
Nǐ mǎi	Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn	háishi mǎi	Yīng-Hàn zìdiǎn?
	dà dītú		xiǎo dītú?
	Zhōngguó máobǐ		Rìběn máobǐ?

B. Say that that bookstore doesn't sell this article; that it sells something else.

EX: Nèijiā shūdiàn búmài Zhōngguó shū, tāmen mài Měiguó shū.

SUB búmài N PN mài N

	Yīngguó		Déguó
	Zhōngguó		Měiguó
Nèijiā shūdiàn búmài	Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn,	tāmen mài	Yīng-Hàn zìdiǎn.
	Zhōngguó dītú,		Měiguó dītú.
	Hánguó		Yuènnán.

C. Say that a person has some things at his home and that he has something else too.

EX: Wǒ jiāli yǒu Zhōngguó shū, yě yǒu Měiguó shū.

SUB yǒu N yě yǒu N

Tā jiāli	Měiguó dītú,		Zhōngguó dītú.
Wǒ péngyou	Déguó zìdiǎn,		Eguó zìdiǎn.
Mǎ Mínglǐ jiā yǒu	Hánguó shū,	yě yǒu	Rìběn shū.
Zhōu Tóngzhì	Yīngguó dītú,		Jiānádà dītú.
Fāng Xiáojie	Měiguó bǐ,		Zhōngguó bǐ.

D. Ask at which bookstore this (or that) thing was bought (or sold.)

EX: Nǐ zhèiběn shū shì zài něijiā shūdiàn mǎi de?

SUB

shì zài

Noun Clause

Nǐ	zhèi běn zìdiǎn zhī máobī	shì zài	něijiā shūdiàn mǎi de?
----	------------------------------	---------	------------------------

E. Ask if something belongs to a person and if something else also belongs to him or her.

EX: Zhèiběn shū shì nǐde ma? Nèiběn shū yě shì nǐde ma?

SUB

shì

PNde ma?

N

yě shì PNde ma?

zhāng dītú Zhèi běn zìdiǎn shì nǐde ma? zhī máobī tāde?	zhāng dītú Nèi běn zìdiǎn yě shì nǐde ma? zhī máobī tāde
---	--

F. State that all the things mentioned are of a certain kind.

EX: Wǒmen zhèrde shū dōu shì Dàlù chū de.

Sub

dōu shì

Noun clause

Tāmen nèrde zìdiǎn Wǒmen zhèrde shū	dōu shì	Táiwān Táiwān chū Dàlù Dàlù chū de (zìdiǎn.) jiǎntīzì (shū.) fántīzì Zhāng Xs. Zhāng Xs. xiě
--	---------	---

G. Ask if something is very expensive or cheap. Reply that it is not too expensive or not too cheap.

EX: Zhèiběn shū hěn guǐ ma? Bú tài guǐ.

SUB		Adv		SV	<u>ma?</u>	Neg	ADV	SV
Zhèi	běn zhāng zhī	zìdiǎn dītú máobǐ	hěn	piányi guī	ma?	Bú	tài	piányi. guī.

H. Ask someone if they sell something at their place (of business.)

EX: Qīngwèn, nǐmen zhèr mài búmài Yīng-Hàn zìdiǎn?

Qīngwèn, SUB V búV O

Qīngwèn,	nǐmen zhèr	mài	búmài	Měiguó dītú?
				Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn?
				Zhōngguó dītú?
				Zhōngguó máobǐ?

I. Ask where something is. Is it there at someone's place?

EX: Nèiběn shū zài nǎr? Shì búshì zài Hú Měilíng nèr?

SUB zài QW V búV zài N LOC

běn zìdiǎn		Wáng Xiānsheng
Nèi zhāng dītú zài nǎr?	Shì búshì zài	Fāng Bǎolán nèr?
zhī máobǐ		Mǎ Tóngzhì

J. Say that you want to buy two things. Then ask another person if he wants to buy anything.

EX: Wǒ yào mǎi yìzhāng dītú gēn liǎngzhī máobǐ. Nǐ yào mǎi shénme?

PN yào V O Conj O PN yào V QW

	běn zìdiǎn	zhang dītú.
Wǒ yào mǎi yì	zhī máobǐ gēn liǎng	běn shū. Nǐ yào mǎi shénme?
	běn shū	běn zìdiǎn.

K. Ask what that bookstore has. Then say that you or someone else intends to buy something.

EX: Nèijiā shūdiàn yǒu shénme? Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yìběn Zhōngguó shū.

Nèijiā shūdiàn yǒu shénme? PN AV mǎi NU ADJ O

Nèijiā shūdiàn yǒu shénme?	Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yì Tā yào	zhī běn zhāng	Zhōngguó bī. Eguó zìdiǎn. Déguó dītú.
----------------------------	------------------------	---------------	---------------------------------------

L. State that someone has several (or a few) of these or those things.

EX: Wǒ yǒu jìběn Zhōngguó shū, jìběn Měiguó shū.

SUB yǒu jì M A O jì M ADJ O

Tā Gāo Xs Zhào Tz Máo Tz Wēn Xj	yǒu jì	běn zhāng běn zhī	Jiānádá shū, Fàguó dītú, Měiguó zìdiǎn, Zhōngguó bī, Yuènnán gāngbī,	jì běn zhī	běn zhāng jì běn zhī	Měiguó shū. Déguó dītú. Eguó zìdiǎn. Riběn bī. Zhōngguó bī.
---------------------------------	--------	-------------------	--	------------	----------------------	---

M. Ask what that bookstore has, buys, or sells; where it is located, or what its name is.

EX: Nèijiā shūdiàn zài xuéxiào qiántou háishi zài xuéxiào hòutou?

SUB V O háishi V O

Nèijiā shūdiàn	zài	Rìběn máobī Eguó zìdiǎn Zhōngguó shū Cháoxián dītú chénglītou chéngwàitou Dàlù Shūdiàn Měixīn Shūdiàn	háishi zài	Rìběn gāngbī? Déguó zìdiǎn? Měiguó shū? Zhōngguó dītú? chéngwàitou? chénglītou? Dàyǒu Shūdiàn? Měilì Shūdiàn?
----------------	-----	---	------------	---

DICTIONATION EXERCISES



With books closed, write down in Pinyin the following sentences as they are dictated by your instructor. Pay particular attention to tones.

1. Nèi liǎngjiā shūdiàn dōu mài Táiwan chū de shū, bú mài Dàlù chū de shū. 那两家书店都卖台湾出的书，不卖大陆出的书。
2. Wǒ huì yòng Yīng-Hàn zìdiǎn, bú huì yòng Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn. 我会用英汉字典，不会用汉英字典。
3. Nèijiā shūdiàn yǒu hěn hǎo de Zhōngguó dìtú. Dìtúshàng yǒu Zhōngguó zì. 那家书店有很好的中国地图，地图上有中国字。
4. Nèiběn xiǎo zìdiǎn yíkuài sì máowǔ, bú guì. Wǒ yào mǎi sānběn. 那本小字典一块四毛五，不贵。我要买三本。
5. Tā bú huì xiě fántǐzì, huì xiě jiǎntǐzì. Jiǎntǐzì, fántǐzì wǒ dōu huì xiě. 他不会写繁体字，会写简体字。简体字、繁体字我都会写。
6. Xiě Zhōngguó zì, kàn Zhōngguó shū, dōu hěn hǎo. 写中国字、看中国书，都很好。
7. Wáng Dànián huì yòng Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn, tā yě huì xiě Zhōngguó zì. 王大会用汉英字典，他也会写中国字。
8. Wǒ bù zhīdào yìgòng duōshao qián. Wǒ zhīdào zìdiǎn shì liǎngkuài bā máo qī. 我不知道一共多少钱。我知道字典是两块八毛七。
9. Hú Měilíng de àiren yào yòng Zhōngguó dìtú. 胡美玲的爱人要用我的中国地图。
10. Tāmen dōu zhùzài chénglǐtōu, bù dōu zài chénglǐtōu gōngzuò. 他们都住在城里头，不都在城里头工作。
11. Tāmen de hái zǐ dōu zài chénglǐtōu shàngxué, tāmen de xuéxiào zài yínháng hòutou. 他们的孩子都在城里头上学，他们的学校在银行后头。
12. Nèige yínháng hòutou yǒu yíge yóujú. Wǒ zài nèige yóujú gōngzuò. 那个银行后头有一个邮局。我在那个邮局工作。
13. Huáng Tóngzhì de àiren xìng Lǐ, jiào Xiǎoyuè. Shì Yuènnán rén. 黄同志的爱人姓李，叫小月。是越南人。

COMMUNICATION EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1

Goal: To find the price of articles in a bookstore.

Procedure: From the following list choose four articles and make up a price for each. Then, fill out the SELLER box.

Articles: Měiguó shū, Zhōngguó shū, dìtú, gāngbǐ, máobǐ, qiānbǐ, Yīngwén zìdiǎn, Táiwān chū de shū, Dàlù chū de shū, Yīng-Hàn zìdiǎn, Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn, fántǐzì zìdiǎn, jiǎntǐzì zìdiǎn.

SELLER

	ARTICLE	PRICE
1		\$
2		\$
3		\$
4		\$

Get together with another student and play the role of a customer in a book store. Question him/her in Chinese and find out the articles that the store sells and the prices for the articles. As you find out the information, write it down in the CUSTOMER box. Then switch roles.*

* If the class has an odd number of students, one student will work with the teacher.

CUSTOMER

	ARTICLE	PRICE
1		\$
2		\$
3		\$
4		\$

When you play the roles, ask for every article on the list and use this dialogue as a guide.

CUSTOMER: Nǐmen zhèr yǒu Měiguó shū ma?

SELLER: Yǒu.

CUSTOMER: Měiguó shū duōshao qián yìběn?

SELLER: Yìběn bákuaì qián.
 CUSTOMER: Zhèijiā shūdiàn yǒu Zhōngguó shū ma?
 SELLER: Méiyǒu.
 CUSTOMER: Nǐmen zhèr mài dìtú ma?
 SELLER: Búmai.
 CUSTOMER: Nǐmen zhèr yǒu méiyǒu gāngbǐ?
 SELLER: Yǒu.
 CUSTOMER: Duōshao qián yìzhǐ?
 SELLER: Yìzhǐ liǎngmáo qián.
 CUSTOMER: Etc...
 SELLER: Etc...

EXERCISE 2

Goal: To guess how much money a student has.

Procedures:

- a. The instructor designates one student (S1) to think of an amount of money under one hundred dollars (in terms of dollars and half dollars. e.g., \$1.00, \$1.50, \$2.00, \$2.50, \$3.50, \$4.50, etc.)
- b. The student then writes the amount on a piece of paper and gives it to the teacher.
- c. The other students (S2, S3, S4, etc.) ask pertinent questions until one guesses the amount. If the amount asked is lower than the written number, S1 gives a thumbs up sign. If higher, he/she gives a thumbs down sign. Example: \$35.50

S2: Nǐ yǒu sānshikuài qián ma? (30)
 S1: (thumbs up)

S3: Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu sìshikuài qián ma? (40)
 S1: (thumbs down)

S4: Nǐ yǒu sānshiwǔkuài méiyǒu? (35)
 S1: (thumbs up)

S5: Nǐ yǒu sānshiwǔkuài wǔmáo qián ma? (35.50)
 S1: Yǒu.

What Do You Say?

1. In a bookstore, ask the clerk whether or not she has an English-Chinese dictionary, and tell her you want long-form characters, not short-form.
2. Ask the clerk in a bookstore if he has maps of Mainland China. Tell him you want one with the place names in Pinyin, not in Chinese characters.
3. You are looking at a map of Táiwān. Ask the clerk where Táiběi is on the map, and where Táizhong is. Ask if he has maps of both places.
4. You want to buy a Chinese brush-pen. You are in a bookstore. Ask the clerk if she has any, and ask about the prices. Tell her you want to write large characters.
5. (In answer to the bookstore clerk's question) Tell her you can write several hundred characters and that you can write both long-form and short-form characters.
6. (You are in Chinatown, S.F.) You ask a passerby if she can tell you the location of a Chinese bookstore which sells books published in Mainland China.
7. Tell someone that you have a Chinese-English dictionary with long-form characters which was produced in Táiwān. Say you want to buy one produced in Běijīng.
8. Tell someone you have a fountain pen, [but] it is useless for writing Chinese characters. Say that you are going to buy a brush-pen.
9. Say you have a Chinese brush-pen, [but] you don't know how to use it. Ask if Chinese characters can be written with a ballpoint pen.
10. Tell a friend that you have an English-Chinese dictionary which is very useful. Say that it was published on the mainland of China, and is in short-form characters.
11. Tell someone that you know that there are two Chinese bookstores in San Francisco. Ask him if he knows which one sells inexpensive maps of China.
12. You have in your hand two dictionaries. Ask the clerk how much each copy costs and how much they will be altogether.
13. You are standing outside a bookstore. Ask someone whether the books sold in that store are expensive or not, and ask where the books were published.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

A. Chinese-English: Cover the Pinyin text below. Teacher: Randomly select sentences and read each one twice with a short pause between readings. Student: Say aloud the English equivalent. (translate)

1. Zhèr yǒu liǎngjiā shūdiàn, yìjiā mài Táiwān chū de shū, yìjiā mài Dàlù chū de shū.
2. Táiwān chū de shū yòng fántǐzì, Dàlù chū de shū yòng jiǎntǐzì. Tāmen dōu yǒu Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn, yě dōu yǒu Yīng-Hàn zìdiǎn.
3. Liǎngjiā shūdiàn yě dōu mài dìtú. Yǒu dà dìtú, yě yǒu xiǎo dìtú. Dōu hěn piányi.
4. Xiànzài wǒmen xiě Zhōngguó zì. Wǒ huì xiě yī, èr, sān, sì, wǔ, wǔge Zhōngguó zì.
5. Zhèiběn Yīng-Hàn zìdiǎn sānkuài sīmáowǔ, zhèiběn Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn bākuài qīmáoliù, yìgòng shíèrkuài-èrmáoyī.
6. Tā yào mǎi liǎngzhǐ Zhōngguó bǐ. Yìzhǐ dà bǐ xiě Zhōngguó dà zì. Yìzhǐ xiǎo bǐ xiě Zhōngguó xiǎo zì.
7. Nèizhāng dìtú hé nèi liǎngzhǐ Zhōngguó bǐ yìgòng mài duōshao qián?
8. Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yìběn Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn, yǒu fántǐzì, yě yǒu jiǎntǐzì.
9. Chénglǐtòu yǒu yìjiā shūdiàn, zài yínháng qiántou, yóujú hòutou. Tāmen bùmài dìtú, mài zìdiǎn, yě mài Zhōngguó bǐ.
10. Tā gēge, jiějie dōu zài shūdiàn gōngzuò. Cóngqián tā gēge zài xuéxiào jiāoshù, tā jiějie zài yóujú gōngzuò.
11. Zhōngguó bǐ hěn piányi. Yìkuài qián liǎngzhǐ. Měiguó gāngbǐ hěn guǐ, liùshikuài qián yìzhǐ.
12. Yuánzhūbǐ búguǐ, yìkuài qián sānzhǐ. Máobǐ guǐ, liùkuài qián yìzhǐ.
13. Xiānsheng yào liǎngzhǐ fēnbǐ, tā búyào qiānbǐ. Tā yǒu qiānbǐ, yě yǒu yuánzhūbǐ, méiyǒu fēnbǐ.
14. Nèige shūdiàn yǒu Shāndōngshèng dìtú, méiyǒu Qīngdǎo dìtú. Yǒu Shànghǎi dìtú, nín yào buyào?
15. Hánguó rén, Riběn rén dōu huì xiě Zhōngguó zì. Yuènnán rén yě huì xiě Zhōngguó fántǐzì. Tāmen dōu búhuì xiě jiǎntǐzì.

B. Chinese-English: Fluency Exercises. Student: Read aloud the sentences in Pinyin below concentrating on fluency, pronunciation and tone. Then give your instructor the English equivalent for each sentence.

1. Nímende shū dōu shì Táiwān chū de. Yǒu fántǐzì de Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn ma? Duōshao qián yìběn?

2. Wáng Dànián de lǎojiā búzài Táiwān, yě búzài Dàlù. Xiànzài tā zhùzai chénglǐtōu, yíge shūdiàn hòutou.

3. Tā yào mǎi piányi de máobǐ. Piányi de máobǐ bùhǎo. Nèige shūdiàn de shū, bǐ dōu hěn guì, yě hěn hǎo.

4. Wǒ yào mǎi liǎngzhī yuánzhūbǐ, sānzhī gāngbǐ, yíòng duōshao qián?

5. Tā dìdi zài xuéxiào gōngzuò, búzài xuéxiào shàngxué, yě búzài xuéxiào jiāoshū.

6. Nèige fàndiànli yǒu yíge xiǎo shūdiàn, mài Zhōngguó dìtú hé Qīngdǎo dìtú, búmài Shànghǎi dìtú.

7. Tā jiějie yǒu shíwǔkuài qián, tā mèimei yǒu èrshíwǔkuài, tā dìdi yǒu sānshíwǔ, yíòng tāmen yǒu duōshao?

8. Wǒmen xiě Zhōngguó zì, jiǎntǐzì, fántǐzì, wǒmen dōu xiě.

9. Tāmen mài zìdiǎn, Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn, Yīng-Hàn zìdiǎn tāmen dōu mài. Wǒ huì yòng Yīng-Hàn zìdiǎn.

10. Wǒmen dōu búhuì yòng Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn. Wǒ yào mǎi yìběn Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn.

11. Nèiběn Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn yǒu yíwàn sānqiān jiǎntǐzì, liǎngqiān liùbǎi fántǐzì.

12. Měiguó chū de Zhōngguó shū dōu hěn guì, Zhōngguó chū de Zhōngguó shū dōu hěn piányi.

13. Zhāng Xiānsheng de dìdi, shì yíjīūsānwǔ nián shēng de. Tā shì jǐyuè jǐhào shēng de?

14. Mǎ Xiānsheng yǒu sānge hái zi, yíge yào fēnbǐ, yíge yào qiānbǐ, yíge yào gāngbǐ.

15. Mǎ Mínglǐ zhùzai shūdiàn hòutou. Tā tàitai zài nèige shūdiàn mài shū.

16. Wáng Dànián zhùzai Niǔyuēzhōu Niǔyuēshì. Niǔyuēshì yǒu bāge shūdiàn mài Zhōngguó shū.

C. English-Chinese: Teacher: Randomly assign sentences to each Student. Student: First read the sentence carefully, then translate into Chinese. Concentrate on word-order, fluency, tones and pronunciation.

1. There are two bookstores inside the city. Both of them sell Chinese books.

2. One bookstore sells books published in Táiwān and the other sells books published in Mainland China.

3. Books published in Táiwān are in full-form characters.

4. Books published in Mainland China are in simplified characters.

5. Books published in Mainland China use Pinyin, and books from Taiwan do not (use Pinyin.)

6. I want to buy two Chinese brush-pens. Also I want to write Chinese characters.

7. Now I can write twelve full-form Chinese characters.

8. The Chinese-English dictionary sells for \$15.75 and the English-Chinese dictionary for \$3.25, altogether they are \$19.00.

9. This is very reasonable (in price). Not expensive. I want to buy five (of them.)

10. Do you have ball-point pens? I want to buy three (of them.) How much?

11. There is a bookstore in the city in front of the bank. His wife works there.

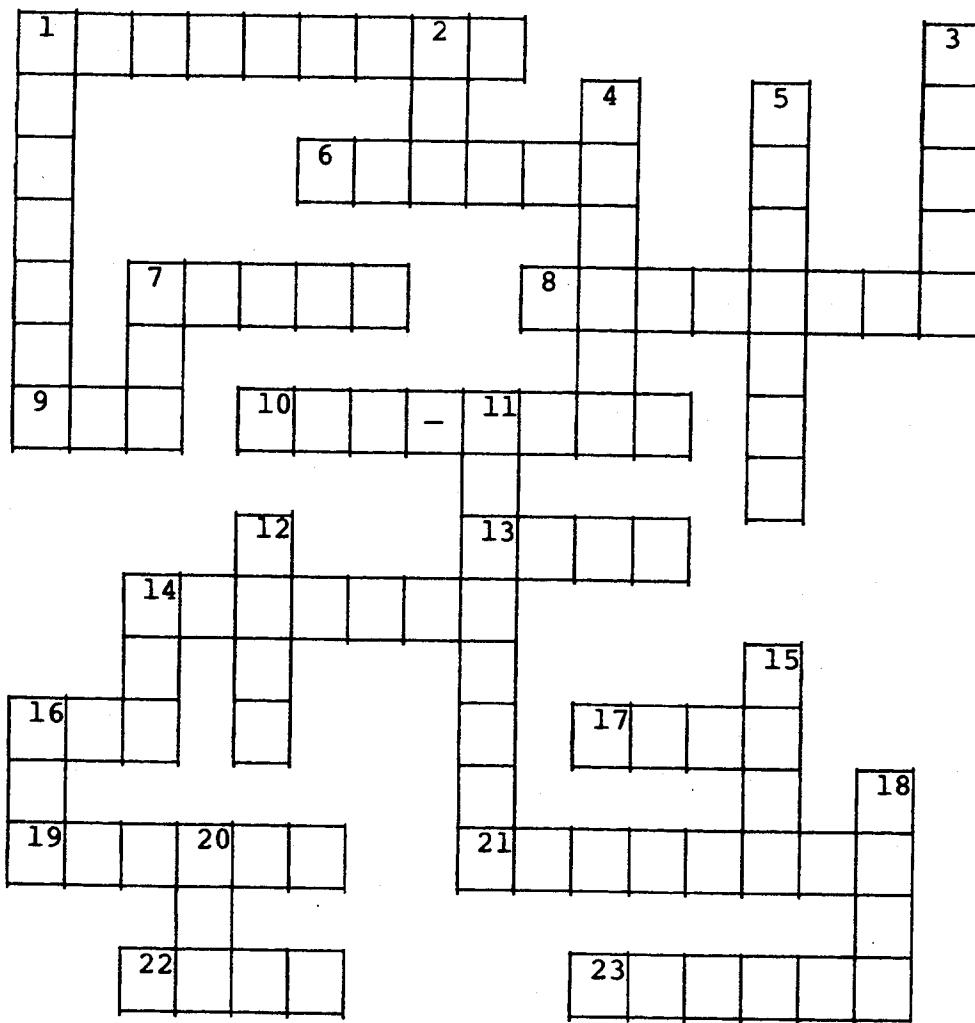
12. He lives in New York City, New York (State). There are many Chinese bookstores in New York City.

13. His older brother wants to buy two maps.

14. His younger brother wants to work in the post office, but there is no post office outside the city.

15. His birthday is October 25, 1952.

ENRICHMENT



ACROSS

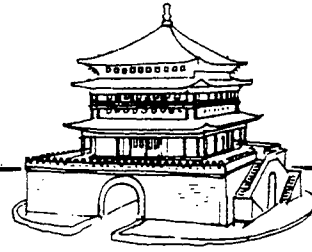
1. pen
6. pen
7. brush
8. simplified
9. expensive
10. ___ - ___ Dictionary
13. female
14. to be _____
16. be able to
17. Mainland
19. NY
20. want
21. a youngster
22. use
23. near Mainland

DOWN

1. useful
2. A one _____ set
3. used on a black board
4. word book
5. full form character
7. sell
11. ___ - ___ Dictionary
12. helpful for finding places
14. buy
15. dollars
16. much
18. place that sells things

LESSON 8

INTRODUCTION



This lesson deals with:

- The verb of motion and direction qù, "to go," leading to the purpose of going or a destination.
- The special meaning of the phrase jiùshì.
- The idiomatic expression búyào jīn.
- The (zài ... ne) construction indicating present situation.
- The "two questions in one" construction.
- Types of meals, dishes, and silverware.
- Use of qǐ, "to," as a verbal suffix.
- Use of the measure -cì, "times, occurrences."



Chīfàn/Eating

OBJECTIVES



Upon completion of this lesson you will be able to:

- a. State that you or someone else is going somewhere to do something.
- b. State what you or another person is presently doing.
- c. Ask and answer questions about your or someone else's ability to perform some actions.
- d. Seek approval or disapproval of an action.

GLOSSARY



1. a 啊 P: (marker for seeking approval, agreement on suggestion)
- a. hǎo a! 好啊! IE: That's good! That's O.K.
2. bānzhǎng 班长 N: class or section monitor
- a. bān 班 M/N: class (of students), squad (military unit)
- b. -zhǎng 一长 N: leader, monitor, commander, head
Zhèibān xuésheng de bānzhǎng shì shéi?
(Who is the monitor in this class?)
- c. xiàozhǎng 校长 N: head of a school
Zhèige xuéxiào de xiàozhǎng xìng Chén.
(The head of this school is surnamed Chen.)
3. bào 报 N: newspaper (M: fèn[r])
- a. bàoshang 报上 N: in the newspaper
- b. bàozhǐ 报纸 N: newspaper
Bàoshang shuō: Yǒu yige nánrén yǒu sānge tàitai.
(In the newspaper it says, "There is a man who has three wives.")
4. cài 菜 N: vegetables, cooked dishes, courses in a banquet
- a. sìge cài 四个菜 N: four-course meal, four dishes
5. chāzi 叉子 N: fork
6. chī 吃 V: to eat
- a. chīfàn/chī fàn 吃饭 VO: to eat (meals, food), to eat cooked rice
7. -cì 一次 M: (of number of occasions, times, etc.)
- a. zhèicì 这次 PH: this time

- b. nèici 那次 PH: that time
- c. něici 哪次? PH: which time?
- Yǒu yíci lǎoshī shuō ... (On one occasion the teacher said ...)
8. dàjiā 大家 N: all, everybody, everyone
- a. wǒmen dàjiā 我们大家 N: all of us
- b. nǐmen dàjiā 你们大家 N: all of you
- c. tāmen dàjiā 他们大家 N: all of them
9. dāozi 刀子 N: knife
- a. dāo-chā 刀叉 N: silverware, cutlery, knives and forks
10. Dōnghǎilóu 东海楼 N/PW: name of a restaurant (House of the Eastern Sea)
11. fànguǎnr 饭馆儿 N: restaurant
- a. fàn 饭 N: food, meal, cooked rice
- b. fànwǎn 饭碗 N: rice bowl
- c. -guǎn(r) 一馆(儿) BF: ending for various public buildings, halls, etc.
12. -fèn(r) 一份(儿) M: for newspaper (a complete issue)
Zhèifèn bào yǒu sānshiliù zhāng. (This newspaper has thirty-six sheets/pages.)
13. gàosong/gàosu 告诉 V: to tell, to let know
- Wǒ gàosong nǐ, wǒmen de bānzhǎng yǒu sān ge nǚ péngyou. (I tell you, our class monitor/squad leader has three girl friends.)
14. gěi 给 V: to give
- a. mài gei 卖给 V: to sell to...
Wǒ yào mài gei tā sān zhī qiānbǐ. (I want to sell him three pencils.)
- b. jiāo gei 交给 V: to hand over to, to give to
Wǒ xiǎng jiāo gei tā liǎng fèn bào. (I intend to hand over to him two newspapers.)

15. jiùshì 就是
zhèi jiùshì nǐde shū.
A-EV: exactly, precisely (used for emphasis)
(This is your book.)
16. kuàizi 筷子
N: chopsticks (M: shuāng)
17. kěyǐ 可以
AV: can (permissible), O.K.
18. lǎoshī 老师
N: teacher
19. měirén 每人
N: each person, everyone
- a. měi 每
SP: each, every
- b. měige 每个
SP-M: each one
- c. měiwèi 每位
SP-M: each person (polite form.
-wèi polite measure for individuals)
- d. měitiān 每天
SP-M: every day
20. ò! 哦
EX: Oh!
21. qù 去
V: to go, to go to
(You go to the restaurant;
I'll go to the school.)
(Where are you going?)
- Nǐ qù fànguǎnr, wǒ qù xuéxiào.
Nǐ qù nǎr?
22. sháor 勺儿
N: spoon
- a. fànsháor 饭勺儿
N: spoon for serving rice
- b. tāngsháor 汤勺儿
N: soup spoon (ladle or small spoon)
23. shuō 说
V: to speak, to talk, to say
(What is he saying now?)
- Tā xiànzài shuō shénme?
- a. shuōhuà 说话
VO: to speak, to talk, to say
(This child is too little;
he/she can't talk.)
- Zhèige háizi tài xiǎo, búhuì shuōhuà.
- b. huà 话
N: speech, language
(I can speak Chinese.)
- Wǒ huì shuō zhōngguó huà.
24. tāng 汤
N: soup

25. -wèi 一位 M: polite for persons, individuals
Zhèiwèi xiānsheng xìng (This gentleman is surnamed Zhāng.)
26. xīcān 西餐 N: Western-style food (meals)
27. xīnwén 新闻 N: news
Bàoshang yǒu shénme (What news is there in the xīnwén? newspaper?)
28. yào jǐn 要紧 SV: to be important
- a. bú yào jǐn 不要紧 SV/IE: to be unimportant/It doesn't matter
29. yīnggāi/yīngdāng 应该/应当 AV: should, ought to, have to
30. zěnmē? 怎么? QW: How?
Nǐ zěnmē zhīdào? (How do you know?)
Wǒ bùzhīdào zěnmē qù. (I don't know how to go there.)
31. zhǐ 纸 N: paper
32. Zhōngcān 中餐 N: Chinese-style food (meals)

OLD WORDS WITH NEW MEANING/FUNCTIONS

33. zài...ne 在...呢 PT: ... are in, ... are on, are at ...
Xuésheng dōu zài xuéxiào (The students are all in ne. school.)
Tā mǔqīn zài Fàguó ne. (Her mother is in France now.)

COMMUNICATIVE EXCHANGES



Chīfàn - Eating a Meal

FRAME 1

- | | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | B: <u>Lǎoshi</u> shuō wǒmen xiànzài <u>chīfàn</u> qù. Nǐ zhīdao bu-zhīdao qù nǎijiā <u>fànguǎnr</u> ? | The teacher says we will now go to eat. Do you know which restaurant we will be going to? |
| 2 | A: <u>Jiùshì</u> nèijiā, jiào <u>Dōng-hǎilóu</u> . Nǐ kàn, tāmen xiànzài dōu <u>zài</u> nèr <u>ne</u> . | It's that restaurant (there), called the Dōnghǎilóu. See, they are all there now. |

Notes

1. Pattern of Movement for a Purpose. Chīfàn qù, "to go to eat," shows action or movement to fulfill a purpose. Qù, "to go," shows movement away from the speaker. Chīfàn, "to eat a meal," is the purpose of going. Qù nǎijiā fànguǎnr? "Which restaurant will (we) be going to?" shows movement to a destination. Fànguǎnr is the destination.

2. Emphasizing with jiù. The response Jiùshì nèijiā, "It is that restaurant," implies precision. Jiù shì (literally, "exactly/specifically is") is a very strong emphatic statement with positive and definite evidence. When the adverb jiù is followed by the verb shì, what follows is emphasized.

Tā shuō zhèi jiùshì Dōnghǎilóu.

He says this is the Dōnghǎilóu.

Wǒmen dōu shuō zhèi jiùshì nǐde shū.

All of us say this is your book.

Tāmen dōu shuō nèi jiùshì Lǐ lǎoshī jiā.

All of them say that that is Mr. Lǐ's house.

Continuing with (zài) ... ne. This pattern is used to stress that the action of the verb is still going on. The particle ne is added at the end of the sentence.

Wǒmen dōu zài zhèr ne.

We are all here now.

(Now is understood.)

Tāmen dōu zài xiězì ne.

They are all writing Chinese characters now.

Tā zài chīfàn ne.

She is eating now.

FRAME 2

- | | | |
|---|--|---|
| 3 | B: Nǐ zhīdao wǒmen <u>chī</u> shénme ma? <u>Zhōngcān</u> háishi <u>xīcān</u> ? | Do you know what we are going to eat? Chinese or Western food? |
| 4 | A: Lǎoshī shuō wǒmen chī Zhōngcān. Sìge <u>cài</u> , yíge <u>tāng</u> . | The teacher says we will eat Chinese food. Four courses and one soup. |

Notes

3. Two Questions in One. The question Nǐ zhīdao wǒmen chī shénme ma? "Do you know what we are going to eat?" is actually two questions in one: Nǐ zhīdao ma? "Do you know?" and wǒmen chī shénme? "What do we eat?" In Zhōngcān and Xīcān, cān means "food" or "meal." Zhōng is the abbreviation of Zhōngguó, and Xī that of Xīfang, "Western world."

4. Ordinary Group Meal. The phrase sìge cài, yíge tāng "four courses and one soup" is a description of a group meal or a "special" meal.

FRAME 3

- | | | |
|---|--|---|
| 5 | B: Wǒ búhuì yòng <u>kuàizi</u> , nǐ huì búhuì yòng <u>kuàizi</u> ? | I don't know how to use chopsticks. Do you know how to use them? |
| 6 | A: Wǒ yě búhuì yòng. <u>Búyào-jīn</u> , wǒmen kéyì yòng <u>dāo-zi</u> , <u>chāzi</u> , gēn <u>sháo</u> . | I don't know how to use them either. It doesn't matter; we can use knives, forks, and spoons. |

Notes

5. Measures -zhī and -shuāng. The measure for a single chopstick is -zhī, but since chopsticks are used in pairs, the measure -shuāng, "pair," is used. Yīshuāng kuàizi means "a pair of chopsticks."

6. Búyào-jīn. In this idiomatic expression, yào-jīn means "to be important" and búyào-jīn, "to be unimportant." It is used here to put someone at ease or to imply that something is not important.

FRAME 4

7	B: Zhèicì <u>dàjiā</u> yíkuàir chīfàn, <u>zěnme</u> gěi qián ne? <u>Yīnggāi</u> gěi duōshao qián?	This time all of us will eat together; how will we pay? How much should we pay?
8	A: Lǎoshī huì <u>gàosong</u> wǒmen <u>měirén</u> yīnggāi gěi duōshao qián.	The teacher will tell us how much money each person should give.
9	B: Qián, <u>jiāogei</u> lǎoshī háishi <u>jiāogei</u> <u>bānzhǎng</u> ?	Do we give the money to the teacher or to the class leader (monitor/squad)?
10	A: Dōu kényi.	Either way is all right.

Notes

7. Measure of Occurrences: cì. The word zhèicì contains a combination of the specifier zhèi, "this," and the measure cì, "time, occasion." Other examples of cì include nèicì, "that time/occasion," měicì, "each time/every time," cìcì, "every time," and nèi sāncì, "on those three occasions."

Dàjiā, "everybody," is the combination of dà and jiā, "big family." It is often used in conjunction with a pronoun or a noun to express "all of" or "all."

Wǒmen dàjiā dōu zài yíkuàir chīfàn. All of us will eat together.

Nǐmen dàjiā dōu zhùzai nǎr? Where do all of you live?

Tāmen dàjiā dōu bùzhīdào. All of them don't know (None of them know).

8. Yīnggāi gěi duōshao qián? "How much should we pay?" has no ne because it follows a ne question. Adding a ne (although correct) would be superfluous and could imply that further details were being requested, such as "Is the tip included?" Gěi, "give," is translated here as "pay," but either translation is acceptable.

9. Verbal Suffix -gěi. In jiāogei, "give to," -gěi is used as a verbal suffix meaning "to." Another example is màigei, "to sell to":

Tā xiǎng màigei wǒ yìběn zìdiǎn.

He wants to sell a dictionary to me.

Bānzhǎng, "class/section monitor." Here bān is a unit, which can be a squad or a class (group). In military usage, -zhǎng is the leader of a unit (from a squad up to an army). In civilian usage, -zhǎng is "head" or "leader." An example is Xiàozhǎng, "head of a school." Here xiào is an abbreviation of xuéxiào. Another example is yóujú-júzhǎng, "postmaster."

FRAME 5

- | | | |
|----|---|--|
| 11 | B: Ò! Wǒmen mǎi yí fèn(r)
Zhōngguó bào kànkān,
hǎo bùhǎo? | Oh! Let's buy a copy of a
Chinese newspaper to read.
How about it? |
| 12 | A: Hǎo a! Wǒmen kànkān
bàoshang yǒu shénme
xīnwén. | Good! We'll see if there is
any news in the newspaper. |

Notes

11. Changing Topics with Ò. Ò is not merely an exclamation marker. It can change the topic of a conversation. Some people pronounce it Òu.

The Measure fèn(r), "copy," is specifically for newspapers, magazines, and periodicals. It also carries the meaning of "a share of" or "a portion of" the divisible lot: wealth, duties, work, etc.

对话

FRAME 1

- | | | |
|---|---------------------------------|---|
| 1 | B: 老师说我们现在吃饭去。
你知道不知道去哪家饭馆儿? | The teacher says we will now go to eat. Do you know which restaurant we will be going to? |
| 2 | A: 就是那家, 叫东海楼。你看, 他们现在都在哪儿呢。 | It's that restaurant (there), called the Dōnghǎilóu. See, they are all there now. |

FRAME 2

- | | | |
|---|-----------------------|---|
| 3 | B: 你知道我们吃什么吗? 中餐还是西餐? | Do you know what we are going to eat? Chinese or Western food? |
| 4 | A: 老师说我们吃中餐。四个菜、一个汤。 | The teacher says we will eat Chinese food. Four courses and one soup. |

FRAME 3

- | | | |
|---|------------------------------|---|
| 5 | B: 我不会用筷子, 你会不会用筷子? | I don't know how to use chopsticks. Do you know how to use them? |
| 6 | A: 我也不会用。不要紧, 我们可以用刀子、叉子跟勺儿。 | I don't know how to use them either. It doesn't matter; we can use knives, forks, and spoons. |

FRAME 4

- | | | |
|----|------------------------------|---|
| 7 | B: 这次大家一块儿吃饭, 怎么给钱呢? 应该给多少钱? | This time all of us will eat together; how will we pay? How much should we pay? |
| 8 | A: 老师会告诉我们每人应该给多少钱? | The teacher will tell us how much money each person should give. |
| 9 | B: 钱, 交给老师还是交给班长? | Do we give the money to the teacher or to the class leader (monitor)? |
| 10 | A: 都可以。 | Either way is all right. |

FRAME 5

- | | | |
|----|---------------------------|---|
| 11 | B: 哦! 我们买一份(儿)中国报看看, 好不好? | Oh! Let's buy a copy of a Chinese newspaper to read How about it? |
| 12 | A: 好啊! 我们看看报上有什么新闻。 | Good! We'll see if there is any news in the newspaper. |

SUMMARY



Frame 1

a. The main verb qù "to go" has two functions: (1) to show motion and direction away from the speaker, and (2) to introduce the purpose of going:

Wǒmen xiànzài qù.
Wǒ kànshū qù.

(We are going now.)
(I'm going to read the book now.)

b. The (zài) ... ne pattern shows the action in progress:

Tā (zài) gōngzuò ne.
Tāmen dōu (zài) shàng-
kè ne.

(He is working now.)
(They are all in school now.)

Frame 2

One example of two questions in one is Nǐ zhīdao tā xìng shénme ma? "Do you know what his surname is?" In it there are two questions: (1) Nǐ zhīdao ma? "Do you know?" and (2) Tā xìng shénme? "What is his surname?"

Frame 3

Búyào jǐn, "It doesn't matter," is an idiomatic expression used to put someone at ease. It literally means "It's not important."

Frame 4

Under ordinary circumstances a question with a question word is a normal question. Example:

Qián, wǒmen jiāogei shéi?
Nǐ gěi tā shénme?

(To whom do we pay the money?)
(What are you giving him?)

Frame 5

a. The exclamation "ò" is used to attract the listener's attention or to introduce a new topic when the speaker wishes.

b. The question-word shénme can be used as "any."

Kànkàn bàoshang yǒu shénme
xīnwén.
Kànkàn tāmen yǒu méiyǒu
shénme dìtú.

(See if there is any news in
the newspaper.)

(See if they have any maps.)

DRILLS I



A. Substitution Drill: Make substitutions as indicated.

(T) Lǎoshī huì gàosu wǒmen měirén yīnggāi gěi duōshao qián. cue: Comrade Sūn
(The teacher will tell each of us how much money we ought to give.)

(S) Sūn Tóngzhì huì gàosu wǒmen měirén yīnggāi gěi duōshao qián.
(Comrade Sūn will tell each of of us how much money we ought to give.)

B. Response Drill: Respond to the teacher's questions with a statement transposing the two objects and adding the adverb dōu "both of them."

(T) Nǐ chī Zhōngcān háishi Xīcān?
(What food do you eat, Chinese food or Western food?)

(S) Zhōngcān, Xīcān wǒ dōu chī.
(I eat both Chinese food and Western food.)

C. Substitution Drill: Make substitutions as indicated.

(T) eight, one

(S) Zhèicì yǒu bāge cài, yíge tāng.
(This time there are eight courses and one soup.)

D. Substitution Drill: Substitute the cued purpose for the purpose in the teacher's statement.

(T) Wǒmen xiànzài chīfàn qù.
(We are going to eat now.)

(S) Wǒmen xiànzài kàn bào qù.
(We are going to read the newspaper now.)

(T) read the newspaper

E. Transformation Drill: Change the teacher's statement into a statement of present situation with zài...ne.

(T) Wǒmen xiànzài chīfàn qù. (We are now going to eat.)	(S) Wǒmen dōu zài chīfàn ne. (We are eating now.)
--	--

F. Response Drill: Respond to the teacher's statement with búyàojīn "it doesn't matter ..." followed by the reason why.

(T) Duìbuqǐ, wǒ búhuì yòng kuàizi. (Excuse me, I don't know how to use chopsticks.)	(S) Búyàojīn, wǒmen yě búhuì yòng kuàizi. (It doesn't matter, we also don't know how to use chopsticks.)
--	---

G. Respond to the teacher's questions with a jiùshì "exactly is" statement that includes the cue.

(T) Nǐ zhīdao bùzhīdao wǒmen qù nǎijiā fànguǎnr? (Do you know which restaurant we are going to?)	(S) Jiùshì nàijiā, jiào Dōnghǎilóu. (It's that one, called Eastern Sea House.)
(T) <u>Eastern Sea House</u>	

H. Substitution Drill: Substitute the sentence's Auxiliary Verb with the Chinese equivalent of the cued Auxiliary Verb.

(T) Wǒ huì yòng kuàizi. (I know how to use chopsticks.)	(S) Wǒ búhuì yòng kuàizi. (I don't know how to use chopsticks.)
--	--

(T) I don't know how

I. Response Drill: Respond to the teacher's question with a statement using dōu kéyì "either way is O.K."

(T) Wǒmen jiāogei lǎoshī
háishi jiāogei bānzhǎng?
(Do we give it to the
teacher or to the class mon-
itor?)

(S) Jiāogei lǎoshī, jiāogei
bānzhǎng dōu kéyì.
(To give it to the teacher
or to the class monitor, ei-
ther way is O.K.)

J. Response Drill: Respond to the teacher's questions using hǎo a! "good!" and the cued reason in Chinese.

(T) Wǒmen mǎi yí fèn bào kàn-
kan, hǎo bu hǎo?
(How about buying a news-
paper to look over?)

(S) Hǎo a! Lǎoshī shuō wǒmen
yīnggāi kàn Zhōngguó bào.
(Good. The teacher said
that we should read Chinese
newspapers.)

(T) The teacher said that we
should

K. Substitution Drill: Make substitutions as indicated.

(T) Tāmen huì shuō Rìběn huà.
(They can speak Japanese.)

(S) Tāmen huì shuō Déguó huà.
(They can speak German.)

(T) German

L. Response Drill: Respond to the teacher's questions with a complete statement including the cued phrase in Chinese.

(T) Nǐ zěnméi méiyǒu zìdiǎn?
(How come you don't have
a dictionary?)

(S) Wǒ méiyǒu qián mǎi zìdiǎn.
(I don't have money to buy
a dictionary.)

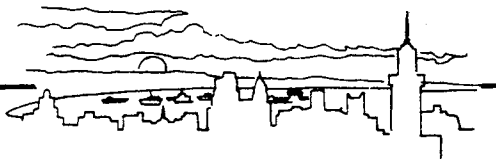
(T) I don't have money

M. Response Drill: Respond to the teacher's question using two of the three pronoun appositions: Wǒmen dàjiā "we, everyone," nǐmen dàjiā "you, everyone," or tāmen dàjiā "they, everyone."

(T) Shéi qù Dōnghǎilóu?
(Who is going to Dōng-
hǎilóu?)

(S) Wǒmen dàjiā dōu qù, tāmen
dàjiā dōu búqù.
(We are all going; none of
them are going.)

DRILLS II



Note: In each drill make a sentence by choosing the appropriate word(s) from each column.

A: Say that there are so many characters in this or that book.

EX: Zhèiběn Táiwān chū de shū yǒu bāqiānge zì.

SP běn PW chū de shū yǒu NU ge N

	Táiwān		5000		
	Dàlù		5500		zì.
Zhèi běn	Běijīng	chū de shū yǒu	6000	ge	jiǎntīzì.
Nèi	Shànghǎi		7000		fántīzì.
	Qīngdǎo		8000		

B. Say that someone doesn't want to eat some kind of food.

EX: Tā búyào chī Rìběnfàn.

SUB búyào V ADJ N

Wǒ			Dōnghǎilóu de	
Nǐ			Rìběn	
Tā	búyào	chī	Hánguó	cài.
Wǒmen			Měiguó	
Nǐmen			Yīngguó	
Tāmen			Fàguó	
			Déguó	
			Húnán	

C. Make a statement using transposed objects.

EX: Táiwān chū de shū, Dàlù chū de shū tāmen dōu mài.

Trans Object Trans Object SUB A V

Xīcān,	Zhōngcān			chī.
jiǎntīzì,	fántīzì	wǒmen		xiě.
Fàguó fàn,	Déguó fàn	tāmen	dōu	yǒu.
Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn,	Yīng-Hàn zìdiǎn	nǐmen		mài.
Běijīng de bào,	Táiwān de bào			kàn.

D. Ask someone whether she or someone else will go someplace.

EX: Nǐ shì búshì qù Dōnghǎilóu?

SUB shì búshì V PW

Nǐmen				Rìběn?
Tāmen	shì búshì	qù		Déguó?
Wǒmen				Fàguó?
Tā mēimei				Nèijia fàndiàn?

E. Ask whether someone is going to do something.

EX: Nǐ shì búshì qù kàn Yīngwén bào?

SUB shì búshì V V-O

Nǐ				chī Xīcān?
Tāmen				chī Zhōngcān?
Wǒmen				kàn Zhōngwén bào?
Lǐ Xs.	shì búshì	qù		mǎi máobǐ?
Mǎ Tz.				mǎi yuánzhūbǐ?
Fāng Bǎolán				mǎi fēnbǐ?
Wáng Dànián				

F. Ask where the things mentioned were bought.

EX: Nǐmen yòng de kuàizi shì zài nǎr mǎi de?

PN yòng de SUB shì zài PW mǎi de?

Tāmen	dāo-chā				
Nǐmen	yuánzhūbǐ			nǎr	
Tāmen yòng de	máobǐ	shì zài	něijia		mǎi de?
Nǐmen	Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn		něige shūdiàn		
Wǒmen	shū				

G. Ask someone how much money has to be paid or used this time.

EX: Zhèicì nimen chī Zhōngguó fàn, yào gěi duōshao qián?

Zhèicì PN V (měirén) AV V duōshao qián?

Zhèicì	nimen	qù	Zhōngguó				
	wǒmen	chī	Xīcān	(měirén)	yào	gěi	duōshao qián?
	tāmen		Zhōngcān,		xiǎng	yòng	
			Dōnghǎilóu,				

H. Say that someone doesn't want to go someplace.

EX: Fāng Bǎolán búyào qù Táiwān.

PN Neg-AV qù PW

Wǒ					
Nǐ					Dàlù.
Tā	búyào		qù		Táiwān.
Wǒmen	bùxiǎng				Rìběn.
Nimen					Fàguó.
Tāmen					Déguó.

I. Say one person is going to do one thing and another person will do something else.

EX: Wáng Dànián qù chīfàn, Fāng Bǎolán qù kàn shū.

PN Purpose (V-O) qù, PN/N Purpose (VO) qù

Wǒ							
Nǐ	huà	huàr,		tā		bào	
Tā	chī	Fàguó fàn		wǒmen	kàn	shū.	
Wǒmen	chī	Déguó fàn	qù,	wǒ	chī	Xīcān	qù.
Nimen	kàn	zìdiǎn		nimen	xiě	Zhōngcān	
Tāmen	xiě	jiǎntīzì		wǒ gēge		zì.	

J. Ask if they have anything (shénme) in their store, etc.

EX: Wōmen kànkān tāmen yǒu shénme shū.

SUB	V-V	SUB	V	Any	O
Wǒ Wōmen	kànkān	tāmen zhèijia nèijia nèr zhèr	yǒu yǒu mài mài mài	shénme	shū. cài. tāng. zìdiǎn.

K. Ask a question with two or more choices.

EX: Nǐ yào máobǐ, yào yuánzhūbǐ hái shì yào qiānbǐ?

1st Choice 2nd Choice háishi 3rd Choice

Nǐ qù	Shànghǎi, Rìběn, Déguó, Tā jiāo nǐmen,	qù	Fàguó Èguó Běijīng jiāo tāmen	háishi	qù	Zhōngguó? Yīngguó? jiāo wǒmen?
-------	---	----	--	--------	----	--------------------------------------

L. With confidence tell someone that this is the place or person you are talking about. Use jiùshì.

EX: Nǐ shuō de Dōnghǎilóu jiùshì nèijia.

Modifying Clause N jiùshì SP N/M

Nǐ		Dōnghǎilóu		zhèi	jiā.
Wǒ	shuō de	Wáng Dànián		nèige	rén.
Wōmen	xiǎng de	xiǎojie		zhèi	wèi.
Nǐ		zìdiǎn	jiùshì	zhèi	běn.
Nǐmen	yào chī de	Zhōngcān		zhèi	jiāde.
Nǐ	búhuì xiě de	nèige zì		zhèige	zì.

M. By changing the numbers involved, say that so many people want to eat so many dishes and soups.

EX: Wǒmen báge rén zhèicì yào báge cài yíge tāng.

PN NU-M people zhèicì V Dishes NU-M Soups

	liǎngge				sānge			
	sānge				sìge			
Tāmen	sìge				wūge	yíge		
Nǐmen	wūge	rén	zhèicì	yào	liùge cài	liǎngge	tāng.	
Wǒmen	liùge				qíge	sānge		
	qíge				báge			

DICTIONATION EXERCISES



With books closed, write down in Pinyin the following sentences dictated by the teacher. Pay special attention to spelling and tones.

1. Tā búhuì yòng kuàizi. Tā yào dāozi gēn chāzi. 他不会用筷子。他要刀子跟叉子。
2. Nǐmen dàjiā yīnggāi měirén gěi wǒ sānbǎikuài qián. 你们大家应该每人给我三百块钱。
3. Bàoshang yǒu Zhōngguó de xīnwén. Méiyǒu Měiguó de xīnwén. 报上有中国的新闻。没有美国的新闻。
4. Liùge rén chī Zhōngguó fàn, qīge cài, yīge tāng. 六个人吃中国饭，七个菜、一个汤。
5. Hú Tóngzhì yǒu sānzhī Zhōngguó máobǐ. Tā yào gěi wǒ yīzhī. 胡同志有三枝中国毛笔。他要给我一枝。
6. Qǐngwèn, Dōnghǎilóu zài nǎr? Zài xuéxiào qiántou ma? 请问，东海楼在哪儿？在学校前头吗？
7. Zhào Wǎnrú Xiǎojiě yào mǎi sānzhāng Zhōngguó dìtú. 赵婉如小姐要买三张中国地图。
8. Nèige fàndiànli yǒu yīge shūdiàn. Tāmen mài zhèige chéng de dìtú. 那个饭店里有一个书店。他们卖这个城的地图。
9. Liú Tàitai xiǎng zài yínháng gōngzuò, bùxiǎng jiāoshu. 刘太太想在银行工作，不想教书。
10. Dōnghǎilóu jiù zài nèr. Wǒmende lǎoshī gēn bānzhǎng dōu zài nèr. 东海楼就在那儿。我们的老师跟班长都在那儿。
11. Zhècì chīfàn yīgòng bāge rén, bāshíbākuài, měirén shíyīkuài. 这次吃饭一共八个人，八十八块，每人十一块。
12. Tāmen bú mài zìdiǎn, bú mài dìtú, jiù mài bǐ. Yǒu gāngbǐ gēn fēnbǐ. 他们不卖字典、不卖地图，就卖笔。有钢笔跟粉笔。
13. Nèige shūdiàn gēn Dōnghǎilóu zài yīkuàir. Shūdiàn zài hòutou. 那个书店跟东海楼在一块儿。书店在后头。

COMMUNICATION EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1

Goal: To find out students' preferences

Procedure: a. Your class monitor is planning a midterm luncheon and wants to know your preferences in terms of 1) restaurant, 2) food, 3) price, and 4) the person to collect the money. Fill in the blank spaces below by selecting from the available choices.

1	
2	
3	
4	

EXAMPLE	
1	Zhōngguó fànguǎnr
2	Zhōngcān
3	\$ 10
4	bānzhǎng

b. The teacher will designate one student to conduct a poll by asking the following questions of another student.

- 1) Zài něijiā fànguǎnr?
- 2) Chī shénme fàn?
- 3) Duōshao qián?
- 4) Qián, yīnggāi jiāogei shéi?

c. A third student will keep track of the answers on the board.

* Mexico

Exercise 2

Goal: To bid using the Chinese monetary system (whoever gets the highest bid not over the original price is the winner).

Procedure: a. The teacher brings several objects to the class, such as a watch, a pen, or a pair of glasses. The teacher writes the approximate price of each article on pieces of paper and holds on to them.

b. One student (S1) is designated auctioneer, conducts the bidding for each article by asking:

(S1) Zhèige nǐmen gěi duōshao qián?	How much will you give for this?
--	-------------------------------------

c. The other students (S2, S3, etc.) bid by saying:

(S2) Nèige wǒ gěi sān- kuài èrmáowǔ. (or other amount)	I will give \$3.25 for that.
--	------------------------------

d. The auctioneer writes each bid on the board.

e. After every student has bid, the auctioneer gets the paper with the price of the article and announces the winner by saying:

Nǐ gěi de jiàqián (price) hěn hǎo.	Your offer is very good.
---------------------------------------	--------------------------

Exercise 3

What Do You Say?

1. Ask a fellow student whether or not he is the monitor of the class. Ask if he knows where the principal is. Is he in the school now?
2. Someone is reading a paper. Ask her what news there is in the paper. Is it a paper published on the Mainland, and are the characters simplified ones?
3. You invite someone to a meal. Tell him everyone says the restaurant is good. Ask what he wants to eat and suggest two dishes and one soup.
4. With several fellow students you go to Dōnghǎilóu to eat. They don't know the score. Tell them what to eat, how much per person it will be, and to whom you will give the money.
5. Your fellow students are worried because they cannot use chopsticks. Tell them it is unimportant because this restaurant has knives, forks and spoons.
6. Someone tells you this is a good restaurant. Ask how he knows this, who told him. Tell him your friends say it is expensive, and it is Western-style.
7. Tell someone you give your girl friend a book every year. This year you don't know what to give her. Ask him what he thinks you should give her.
8. Tell someone that, when eating in a Chinese restaurant, he/she should use chopsticks. Eating with knives and forks is for a Western-style restaurant.
9. You introduce a gentleman. Say he is American but speaks Chinese. His wife is French, doesn't speak Chinese but can speak English.
10. Someone tells you eating is unimportant. Ask who says this. Tell him you think it is very important, and that you use chopsticks to eat Chinese food.
11. Tell someone you know how to speak Chinese, but you can't write Chinese characters with a brush-pen. Say that you use a ball-point pen to write.
12. Tell someone the newspaper you are reading is yours. You bought it in a bookstore where they have newspapers from everywhere.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

A. Chinese-English: Cover the Pinyin text below. Teacher: Randomly select sentences and read each one twice with a short pause between readings. Student: Say aloud the English equivalent. (translate)

1. Zhèicì nǐmen dàjiā chī Zhōngguó fàn, jīge rén, jīge cài, jīge tāng?

2. Zhèicì wǒmen dàjiā chī Zhōngguó fàn, yīgòng bāge rén. Bāge cài, yīge tāng.

3. Měirén gěi liùkuàiwǔ. Dōu jiāogei bānzhǎng. Bāge rén, yīgòng wūshìèrkuài qián. Hěn piányi.

4. Wǒmen bāge rén yǒu liǎngge búhuì yòng kuàizi. Yīge nànde, yīge nǚde. Tāmen yòng dāozǐ gēn chāzi.

5. Zhèicì tāmen qù Dōnghǎilóu Fànguǎnr. Yǒu sāngèrén chī Xīcān, wǔge rén chī Zhōngcān.

6. Dōnghǎilóu yǒu Zhōngcān, yě yǒu Xīcān. Chī Xīcān yīnggāi yòng dāozǐ gēn chāzi.

7. Xīcān gēn Zhōngcān, hē tāng dōu yòng sháor. Nèige sháor jiào tāngsháor.

8. Táiwān chū de shūli méiyóu jiǎntīzǐ, yě méiyóu Pīnyīn. Dōu shì fántīzǐ.

9. Dàlù chū de shū yǒu jiǎntīzǐ, yě yǒu fántīzǐ. Dàlù chū de dītú dōu yòng Pīnyīn.

10. Tā yào mǎi liǎngfèn(r) bào. Yīfèn(r) Yīngguó bào, yīfèn(r) Zhōngguó bào.

11. Zhōngguó bàoshang yǒu Zhōngguó xīnwén, yě yǒu Měiguó xīnwén. Yīngwén bàoshang yǒu Měiguó xīnwén.

12. Wǒmende bānzhǎng yào mǎi jiǔzhǐ Zhōngguó máobǐ, gěi wǒmen xuésheng měirén yīzhǐ.

13. Zhāng lǎoshī gēn wǒmen dàjiā yīkuàir chī Xīcān. Tā huì yòng dāozǐ gēn chāzi.

14. Kànkan tāmende Zhōngguó bào, shì Dàlù chū de háishi Táiwān chū de?

15. Búshì Dàlù chū de, yě búshì Táiwān chū de. Shì Měiguó chū de. Méiyóu jiǎntīzǐ.

16. Wǒ yào jiāogei nǐ wǔbǎikuài qián. Nǐ yīnggāi jiāogei nǐ àiren. Tā zhīdao yīnggāi mǎi nǐ sānběn zìdiǎn.

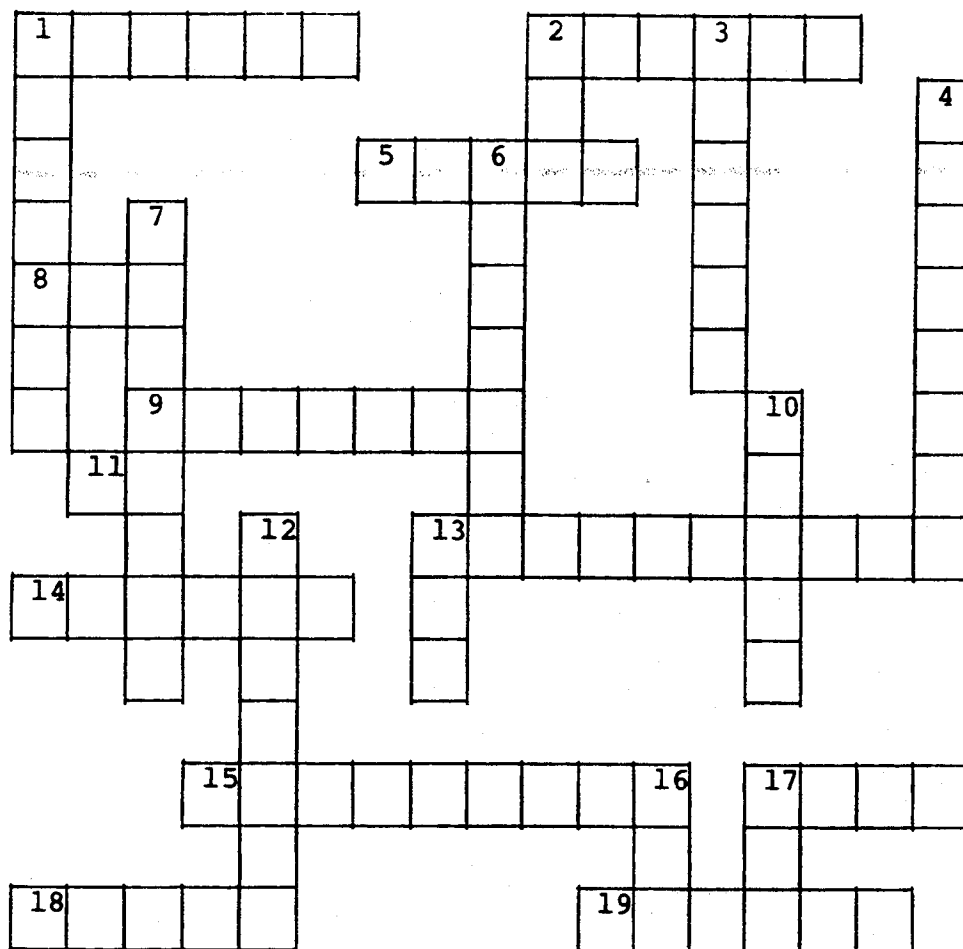
B. Chinese-English: Fluency Exercise. Student: Read aloud the Pinyin sentences concentrating on fluency, pronunciation and tones. Then give the English equivalent for each sentence.

1. Nèijiā fànguǎn(r) jiào Dōnghǎilóu. Tāmende Zhōngguó cài hěn hǎo. Yě búguì. Liùge rén chí fàn, měirén sānkuài qīmáowǔ.
2. Nèicì wǒmen báge rén qù Dōnghǎilóu chī Xīcān. Měirén liùkuài èrmáowǔ.
3. Dōnghǎilóu yǒu dāozi, chāzi, gēn sháor. Chī Zhōngcān, tāmen gěi kuàizi gēn sháor.
4. Chī Xīcān, tāmen gěi dāozi, chāzi, gēn sháor. Hē tāng dōu yòng sháor.
5. Wáng Dànián de érzi mài bào. Tā mài Zhōngguó bào, yě mài Měiguó bào. Měitiān yào mài sānshibákuài qián.
6. Chéngwàitou yǒu sìge dà fànguǎnr. Yǒu yíge dà fànguǎnr zài shān hòutou. Hěn yǒumíng. Hěn guì.
7. Chénglǐtou fànguǎnr dōu bú tài dà. Nèige xuéxiào qiántou yǒu sānge xiǎo fànguǎnr, dōu hěn piányi.
8. Yǒu yíge Zhōngguó xiǎo fànguǎnr, yíge rén yíge cài, yíge tāng, yíkuài yímáoyi.
9. Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yìzhāng zhèige chéng de dìtú. Nǐ zhīdao nǐjiā shūdiàn mài ma?
10. Chénglǐtou de nèige dà fàndiànli, yǒu yíge xiǎo shūdiàn. Tāmen mài zhèige chéng de dìtú.
11. Nèige shūdiàn mài Táiwan chū de shū, kěshì tāmen yǒu Zhōngguó Dàlù de dìtú. Dōu shì fántǐzì. Méiyǒu jiǎntǐzì.
12. Lǎoshī dōu zhīdao wǒmen yào qù Zhōngguóchéng. Nǐ xiǎngxiang nǐ yào mǎi shénme shū, chī shénme fàn.
13. Tā xiǎng kàn Zhōngwén bào. Dàlù chū de bào yǒu jiǎntǐzì. Táiwan chū de bào méiyǒu jiǎntǐzì.
14. Lǎoshī yǒu sānzhī Zhōngguó máobǐ. Xiě dà zì, tā yòng dà máobǐ, xiě xiǎo zì, tā yòng xiǎo máobǐ.
15. Měiguó rén yòng yuánzhūbǐ gēn qiānbǐ. Lǎoshī yòng fēnbǐ. Xiě Zhōngguó zì yòng Zhōngguó máobǐ.

C. English-Chinese: Teacher: Randomly assign sentences to each Student. Student: First read the sentence carefully, then translate into Chinese. Concentrate on word-order, fluency, tones and pronunciation.

1. The teacher says that we will go to two bookstores. One sells books published in Taiwan.
2. The other bookstore sells books published in Mainland China. They use simplified characters.
3. The class monitor says that we will go to Dōnghǎilóu. They serve (have) Western meals and Chinese food.
4. This time we will have eight students eating together. We will have eight courses and one soup.
5. The class monitor says that everyone will give him \$4.25. He will pay Dōnghǎilóu.
6. Dōnghǎilóu has forks, knives, spoons and chopsticks. I know there is a person who doesn't know how to use chopsticks. It doesn't matter.
7. I wish to buy two dictionaries. One is a Chinese-English dictionary; the other is an English-Chinese dictionary.
8. He plans to buy two Chinese-English dictionaries. One doesn't have simplified characters; the other (dictionary) does.
9. All of us can (know how to) write Chinese characters. We don't have Chinese brush-pens. We use ball-point pens.
10. We can write simplified and full-form characters. I can write two "ge's." One is in simplified form.
11. This newspaper is printed in Mainland China. It has simplified and full-form characters.
12. In the newspaper there is American news and Chinese news from Taiwan and the Mainland.
13. Chinese newspapers are very expensive. American newspapers are very inexpensive (cheap).
14. The newspaper says that the food in a restaurant inside the city is very inexpensive.
15. One dollar and eleven cents is the cost for one person. He or she will have one dish and one soup.

ENRICHMENT



ACROSS

1. knives and forks
2. what to do in a restaurant
5. everyone
8. shuō _____
9. _____ him the time
11. opposite of come
13. mental process
14. it's in a newspaper
15. principal
17. measure word
18. type of food
19. not expensive

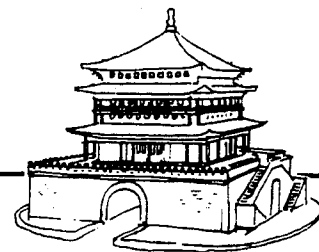
DOWN

1. question word
2. dishes
3. bowl
4. in the newspapers
6. _____ it _____ him
7. place to eat
10. which time?
12. everyday
13. _____ a note
16. give
17. food

Key on Pg. 213

LESSON 9

INTRODUCTION



This lesson deals with:

- Auxiliary verbs used with verb-object compounds.
- Auxiliary verbs modified by adverbs.
- Modified nouns understood.
- Uses of duō and shǎo.
- Negating xiǎng



Zhōngguó huà

OBJECTIVES



Upon completion of this lesson you will be able to:

- State likes or dislikes of objects and people.
- State fondness/love for something or someone
- Distinguish between being capable of, knowing how to and being permitted to.
- State the idea that one has the ability/capacity to do something and sometimes even to do it to excess.

GLOSSARY



1. ài 爱 V/AV: to love, to be fond of/to love to...
Zhōng Tóngzhì ài tā tàitai. (Comrade Zhōng loves his wife.)
Tā ài kàn dìtú. (He loves to read maps.)
2. dōngxī 东西 N: things (M: jiàn)
Zhèi liǎngjiàn dōngxī shì tāde. (These two things are his.)
3. duō 多 SV/NU: to be [too] much or many
- a. bùduō 不多 SV/NU: to be not many or not much
4. fù-mǔ 父母 N: parents
5. fúzhuāng 服装 N: apparel (clothes, shoes, socks, boots, hats, etc.)
- a. fúzhuāngdiàn 服装店 N: apparel store
6. hǎokàn 好看 SV: to be pretty, handsome, good-looking, attractive
Fāng Bǎolán hěn hǎokàn. (Fāng Bǎolán is very pretty.)
7. hējiǔ 喝酒 VO: to drink (alcoholic beverages)
Tā hěn ài hējiǔ. (He loves to drink very much.)
- a. hē 喝 V: to drink
- b. jiǔ 酒 N: wine
- c. píjiǔ 啤酒 N: beer
8. huàhuàr 画画儿 VO: to paint pictures
- a. huà 画 V: to paint, to draw (pictures)
- b. huàr 画儿 N: picture, painting (M: zhāng)
Wǒ yào huà sānzhāng huàr. (I want to paint three pictures.)

9. jiàn 件 M: a piece of, a matter of
- a. yíjiàn yīfu 一件衣服 M: a piece of clothing
10. kěshì 可是 MA: but, however
- Wǒ yào hējiǔ, kěshì wǒ méiyǒu qián. (I want to drink, but I don't have money.)
11. máfan 麻烦 SV/V/N: to be troublesome/to trouble, to bother/trouble
- Huàhuàr hěn máfan. (To paint pictures is very troublesome. To drink is not.)
- Hējiǔ bùmáfan. (He is bothering me.)
- Tā máfan wǒ. (He says that he is having a lot of trouble.)
- Tā shuō tā yǒu hěnduō máfan.
12. néng 能 AV: can, be capable of
- Tā hěn néng hējiǔ. (He is very capable of drinking.)
13. píng 瓶 N: bottle(s) of ...
- a. píngzi 瓶子 M: bottle
- Tā xiǎng mǎi sānpíng píjiǔ. (She intends to buy three bottles of beer.)
14. pùzi 铺子 N: store, shop
- a. pù 铺 BF/N: shop/store
- b. shūpù 书铺 N: bookstore, bookshop
15. shān 山 N: mountain, hill
16. shāngdiàn 商店 N: store, shop (M: jiā)
17. shǎo 少 SV/NU: to be few or little in quantity
- a. bùshǎo 不少 SV/NU: to be quite a few
- Tā yǒu bùshǎo zìdiǎn. (She has quite a few dictionaries.)
18. shípǔ/càipǔ 食谱/菜谱 N: cookbook (recipe book)

19. shuāng 双 M: [a] pair of
yìshuāng kuàizi NU-M N: a pair of chopsticks
20. shuǐ 水 N: water
- a. shānshuǐ 山水 N: mountains and water, scenery
- b. shānshuǐhuà 山水画儿 N: landscape (painting)
Wǒ xǐhuan nèizhāng shānshuǐhuà. (I like that landscape painting.)
- c. qìshuǐ 汽水 N: soda, soft drink
- d. hē shuǐ 喝水 VO: to drink water
Wǒ yào hē shuǐ, búyào hē qìshuǐ. (I want to drink water, not soda.)
21. sòng 送 V: to present (a gift), to give (a gift)
Nǐ yào sòng shénme? (What do you want to give?)
- a. sònggei 送给 V: to present to, to give to
Wǒ sònggei tā liǎngzhāng huà. (I am giving two paintings [as a gift] to him.)
22. tào 套 M: a set of, a suit of
- a. yítào shū 一套书 NU-M N: a set of books or furniture
- b. yítào yīfu 一套衣服 NU-M M: a suit of clothes
23. tīngshuō 听说 IE: I heard (that ...)
Tīngshuō nǐ yǒu liǎngge nǎnpéngyou, liùge nǚpéngyou. (I heard that you have two boyfriends and six girl friends.)
24. wén 文 BF/N: written language/language
- a. Yīngwén 英文 N: English (language)
- b. Zhōngwén 中文 N: Chinese (language)
25. xié 鞋 N: shoes (M: shuāng pair, zhī single shoe)
- a. bùxié 布鞋 N: cotton shoes

- b. píxié 皮鞋 N: leather shoes
- c. yīshuāng xié 一双鞋 NU-M/N: a pair of shoes
- d. xiépù 鞋铺 N: shoe store
26. xǐhuan 喜欢 V/AV: to like/like to
 Dàjiā dōu xǐhuān tā. (Everybody likes him.)
 Tā xǐhuan huàhuà. (He likes to paint pictures.)
27. yīfu/yīshang 衣服/衣裳 N: clothes
 Nèijiā shāngdiàn mài xié, (That store sells shoes; it
 búmài yīfu. doesn't sell clothing.)
 Nèijiā fúzhūangdiàn búmài (That apparel store does
 xié. not sell shoes.)
28. yīnwei 因为 MA: because
 Wǒ bùmǎi nàběn shū, yīnwei (I am not going to buy that
 wǒ méi qián. book because I don't have
 the money.)
29. yǒumíng 有名 SV: to be famous, to be well-
 known
 Nèrde shānshuǐ hěn yǒumíng. (The scenery over there is
 very famous.)
30. zìjǐ 自己 N: self
 Nǐ zìjǐ qù. (Go by yourself.)
31. zhǒng 种 M: kind of, sort of, type of
 Wǒ bùxǐhuan nèizhǒng xié. (I don't like that kind of
 shoe.)
32. zuò 做 V: to make, to do
- a. zuòfàn 做饭 V/VO: to cook/to cook rice
 Wǒ xǐhuan zuò Zhōngguó fàn. (I like to cook Chinese
 food.)
- b. zuò mǎimai 做买卖 VO: to do business
- c. mǎimai 买卖 N: business
 Nèige mǎimai hěn dà. (That business is very big.)
 Nǐ huì zuò mǎimai ma? (Can you do business?)

COMMUNICATIVE EXCHANGES



Mǎi Dōngxi - Shopping

FRAME 1

(Two DLI CM students are shopping for gifts in Chinatown.)

1	A: Wǒ hěn xǐhuan zhèizhāng zhōngguó huàr. Yǒu shān, yǒu shuǐ, hěn hǎokàn.	I like this Chinese painting very much. It has mountains and streams and is very pretty.
2	B: Nǐ xǐhuan huàhuàr ma?	Do you like to paint (pictures)?
3	A: Wǒ hěn xǐhuan huàhuàr, yě xǐhuan kàn huàr. Nǐ ne?	I like to paint (pictures) very much; I also like to look at pictures. How about you?
4	B: Wǒ ài kàn huàr, kěshì búhuì huàhuàr.	I am fond of looking at pictures but I cannot paint (pictures).

Notes:

1. Measure for Flat Surfaces. Previously -zhāng was presented as the specific measure for dìtú, "map." Here it is the specific measure for huàr, "picture." It is usually used with things having flat, extended surfaces, such as newspapers, tables, etc.

2. Auxiliary Verbs Used with Verb-Object Compounds. The sentence Nǐ xǐhuan huàhuàr ma? "Do you like to paint pictures?" is a good example of the S-AV-VO pattern. Other examples:

S AV VO

Wǒ ài kàn Zhōngguó bào. I am fond of reading Chinese newspapers.

Tā xǐhuan zuò mǎimai. He likes to do business.

3. Modifying Auxiliary Verbs. An auxiliary verb can be modified by an adverb:

S ADV AV VO

Nǐ hěn ài kànào. You like to read newspapers very much.

4 Special use of ài. When using the Verb/AV ài "to love, be fond of/love to," it must be remembered that you can be fond of doing something and love someone but not love something.

FRAME 2

(In a gift shop, they speak to the proprietor.)

5	A: Nǐmen zhèlǐ yǒu méiyǒu Zhōngguó cài de shípǔ?	Do you have Chinese cookbooks (here)?
6	C: Yǒu. Yǒu Zhōngwén de, yě yǒu Yīngwén de. Dōu shì sānkuài bāmáo yìběn.	Yes, we do. We have cookbooks in the Chinese language and also in English. They are all \$3.80 a copy.
7	A: Wǒ yào yìběn Yīngwén de sònggei wǒ mǔqīn, yīnwei tā hěn xǐhuan zuòfàn.	I want an English (language) copy to give to my mother, because she likes to cook very much.
8	B: Wǒ yě mǎi yìběn sònggei wǒ tàitai. Tā yě hěn ài zuòfàn.	I'll also buy a copy to give to my wife. She is also very fond of cooking.

Notes:

6 Modified Nouns Understood. In the phrase yǒu Zhōngwén de, the modified noun shípǔ, "cookbook," is understood. The same is true in the phrase yǒu Yīngwén de.

Bound Form -wén. The bound form -wén following a country's name denotes its language: Zhōngwén, "Chinese language," and Yīngwén, "English language."

FRAME 3

9	A: Zhèjiā shāngdiàn (pùzi) yǒu hěn duō Zhōngguó fú-zhuāng gēn Zhōngguó bùxié.	This store has a lot of Chinese clothing and Chinese cotton shoes.
10	B: Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yìshuāng bùxié sònggei wǒ àiren. Bùxiǎng mǎi yīfu. Yīnwei tài máfan.	I intend to buy a pair of cotton shoes to give to my wife. I don't intend to buy clothes because that is too much trouble.

Notes:

9 Duō and shǎo, "many" and "few." When these two stative verbs function as adjectives, they must be modified either by bù or by an adverb, such as hěn. As adjectives they may or may not use de.

Acceptable: hěn duō(de) shū very many books
 hěn shǎo(de) rén very few people
 bùshǎo(de) rén quite a few people

Unacceptable: duō(de) shū
 shǎo(de) rén

10 Negating xiǎng. Wǒ bùxiǎng mǎi yīfu, "I don't intend to buy clothes." Since, in the context of this conversation, xiǎng means "intend" and not "to think," it is permissible to negate xiǎng.

Uses of máfan. The three main functions of this word are as follows:

- | | | | |
|----|-----|--------------|-------------------|
| a. | SV: | hěn máfan | very troublesome |
| b. | N: | Yǒu máfan. | There is trouble. |
| c. | V: | Tā máfan wǒ. | He bothers me. |

FRAME 4

- | | | |
|----|---|---|
| 11 | A: Wǒ fùqin hěn néng <u>hējiǔ</u> ,
wǒ yào mǎi <u>jǐpíng</u> zhōngguó
jiǔ sònggei tā. | My father can really drink
(hold his liquor well). I
want to buy several bottles
of Chinese alcoholic drink
to give to him. |
| 12 | B: Nǐ xiǎng mǎi shénme jiǔ? | What kind of alcoholic drinks
do you intend to buy? |
| 13 | A: <u>Píjiǔ</u> . | Beer. |
| 14 | B: <u>Tīngshuō</u> Zhōngguó píjiǔ
hěn <u>yǒumíng</u> . Wǒ mǎi <u>qīpíng</u> .
Wǔpíng gěi wǒ fùmǔ, <u>zìjǐ</u>
liǎngpíng. | I have heard (it said) that
Chinese beer is very famous.
I'll buy seven bottles: five
for my parents and two for
myself. |

Notes

11 Hěn néng (hējiǔ), "be very capable of drinking." This is a good example of the special meaning that can be applied to the combination of hěn néng. It is not simply "he can drink." It

means that he really can drink long and hard without significant effect. Similarly, tā hěn néng zuò mǎimai is not simply "he can really do business," but "he is very accomplished in conducting business."

14 Tīngshuō, "I have heard (it said)," is a common introductory clause for an indirect quote.

Wǒ tīngshuō tā hěn yǒuqián. I have heard (it said) that he
is very rich.

对话

FRAME 1

- | | | |
|---|-------------------------------|---|
| 1 | A: 我很喜欢这张中国画儿。
有山、有水, 很好看。 | I like this Chinese painting very much. It has mountains and streams, and is very pretty. |
| 2 | B: 你喜欢画画儿吗? | Do you like to paint (pictures)? |
| 3 | A: 我很喜欢画画儿, 也喜欢看画儿。你呢? | I like to paint (pictures) very much; I also like to look at pictures. How about you? |
| 4 | B: 我爱看画儿, 可是不会画画儿。 | I am fond of looking at pictures but I cannot paint (pictures). |

FRAME 2

- | | | |
|---|----------------------------|--|
| 5 | A: 你们这里有没有中国菜的食谱? | Do you have Chinese cookbooks (here)? |
| 6 | C: 有。有中文的, 也有英文的。都是三块八毛一本。 | Yes, we do. We have cookbooks in the Chinese language and also in English. They are all \$3.80 a copy. |
| 7 | A: 我要一本英文的送给我母亲, 因为她很喜欢作饭。 | I want an English (language) copy to give to my mother, because she likes to cook very much. |
| 8 | B: 我也买一本送给我太太。她也很爱作饭。 | I'll also buy a copy to give to my wife. She is also very fond of cooking. |

FRAME 3

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| 9 A: 这家商店(铺子)有很多中国服装跟布鞋。 | This store has a lot of Chinese clothing, and Chinese cotton shoes. |
| 10 B: 我想买一双布鞋送给我爱人。不想买衣服。因为太麻烦。 | I intend to buy a pair of cotton shoes to give to my wife. I don't intend to buy clothes because that is too much trouble. |

FRAME 4

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--|
| 11 A: 我父亲很能喝酒, 我要买几瓶中国酒送给他。 | My father can really drink (hold his liquor well). I want to buy several bottles of Chinese alcoholic drinks to give to him. |
| 12 B: 你想买什么酒? | What kind of alcoholic drink do you intend to buy. |
| 13 A: 啤酒。 | Beer. |
| 14 B: 听说中国啤酒很有名。我买七瓶。五瓶给我父母, 自己两瓶。 | I have heard (it said) that Chinese beer is very famous. I'll buy seven bottles: five for my parents and two for myself. |

SUMMARY



Frame 1

a. The measure -zhāng is the measure for things having flat, extended surfaces.

b. Auxiliary verbs can be used with verb-object compounds. The auxiliary verb can, at the same time, be modified by an adverb.

S AV VO

Wǒ ài huàhuàr.

I like to paint pictures.

Wǒ ài zuòfàn.

I like to cook.

S AV V Modifier O

Wǒ ài huà shānshuǐ huàr.

I like to paint landscape pictures.

Wǒ ài zuò Zhōngguó fàn.

I like to cook Chinese food.

S Modifier AV V O

Wǒ hěn ài huàhuàr.

I like to paint pictures very much.

Wǒ hěn ài zuò Zhōngguó fàn.

I like to cook Chinese food very much.

Frame 2

a. When a noun is modified by another noun using the -de construction, it is possible to drop the modified noun when it is clearly understood.

b. Sònggei means "to give to" and "to give to someone as a gift."

c. -Wén, in conjunction with a country's name, designates that country's language; e.g., Déwén, "German" or Èwén, "Russian."

Frame 3

a. Duō and shǎo when functioning as adjectives require an adverbial modifier and may or may not use -de.

b. The difference between fúzhāng and yifu is a matter of usage. Fúzhāng is a common term generally used in combination with the noun shāngdiàn, "store". Whereas yifu is not generally used that way.

c. When xiǎng has a meaning other than "to think," it is permissible to negate it.

Wǒ bùxiǎng mǎi bào.

I don't intend to buy a newspaper.

d. Máfan. The three main functions, as stated before are as follows:

1. As a SV: hěn màfan very troublesome
2. As a N: Yǒu máfan. There is trouble.
3. As a V: Tā máfan nǐ. He bothers you.

Frame 4

a. The special meaning of hěn néng is such that one's ability to do something is shown to be extensive. In this case, someone's ability to drink, to hold one's liquor, is described as being very great.

b. Tīngshuō "I have heard (it said)," is another one of the verbs in Chinese that is used to introduce a sentence.

DRILLS I



A. Transformation Drill: Insert an adjective between the verb and the object in the teacher's statement.

(T) Wǒ xǐhuan zuò fàn. (I like to cook food.)	(S) Wǒ xǐhuan zuò Zhōngguó fàn. (I like to cook Chinese food.)
--	---

B. Substitution Drill: Make substitutions as indicated.

(T) Mǎ Tóngzhì bùxǐhuan hējiǔ. (Comrade Mǎ doesn't like to drink.)	(S) Mǎ Tóngzhì bùxǐhuan zuò fàn. (Comrade Mǎ doesn't like to cook.)
(T) to cook	

C. Response Drill: Respond to the teacher's questions with a negative and a positive statement.

(T) Nǐmen yǒu Zhōngwén de shí-pǔ ma? (Do you have cookbooks in Chinese?)	(S) Wǒmen méiyǒu Zhōngwénde, yǒu Yīngwénde. (We don't have cookbooks in Chinese, but we have them in English.)
---	---

D. Expansion Drill: Add a statement with kěshì, "but," to the teacher's statement.

(T) Wǒ ài kàn huà. (I am fond of looking at pictures.)	(S) Wǒ ài kàn huà, kěshì búhuì huàhuà. (I am fond of looking at pictures, but I don't know how to paint.)
---	--

E. Response Drill: Respond to the teacher's questions with yīnwei "because" in the statement.

(T) Wǒ bùxiǎng mǎi yīshang.

(I don't want to buy clothes.)

(S) Wǒ bùxiǎng mǎi yīshang,
, yīnwei mǎi yīshang
tài máfan.

(I don't want to buy clothes,
because to buy clothes is too
much trouble.)

F. Expansion Drill: Add a statement with sònggei, "present (a gift) to," to the teacher's statement.

(T) Wǒ xiǎng mǎi liǎngpíng
píjiǔ.

(I'm planning to buy two
bottles of beer.)

(S) Wǒ xiǎng mǎi liǎngpíng
píjiǔ, sònggei wǒ fùqīn.

(I'm planning to buy two
bottles of beer to give to my
father.)

G. Expansion Drill: Add a statement with the word zìjǐ, "self," to the teacher's statement.

(T) Sānpíng píjiǔ, gěi wǒ
fùmǔ liǎngpíng.

(Three bottles of beer...,
I'll give two bottles to
my parents.)

(S) Sānpíng píjiǔ, gěi wǒ
fùmǔ liǎngpíng, wǒ zìjǐ yì-
píng.

(Three bottles of beer...,
I'll give two bottles to my
parents and one to myself.)

H. Transformation Drill: Convert the teacher's statements from positive to negative or from negative to positive.

(T) Wǒ xǐhuan chī Zhōngguó
cài, bùxǐhuan hē Zhōngguó tāng.

(I like to eat Chinese
dishes; I don't like [to drink]
Chinese soup.)

(S) Wǒ bùxǐhuan chī Zhōngguó
cài, xǐhuan hē Zhōngguó tāng.

(I don't like to eat Chi-
nese dishes; I like [to drink]
Chinese soup.)

I. Response Drill: Respond to the teacher's questions with a statement which includes Wǒ tīngshuō, "I have heard (it said)."

(T) Nǐ zhīdao tā yǒu duōshao qián ma?

(Do you know how much money he has?)

(S) Wǒ tīngshuō tā yǒu wǔwànkuài qián.

(I heard that he has \$50,000.00)

J. Transformation Drill: Change the teacher's statement to a statement with -de added, delete the verb (V) yǒu and add hěn duō or bùshǎo as in the model.

(T) Dézhōu yǒu hěn duō rén.
(There are very many people in Texas.)

(S) Dézhōu de rén hěn dà.
(The population of Texas is very large.)

K. Substitution Drill: Make substitutions as shown in the model with the auxiliary verbs néng, huì, kéyì, ài, xǐhuan, yào and xiǎng.

Model sentence: Tā xǐhuan zuòfàn.

He likes to cook.

(S-1) Tā ài zuòfàn.

He loves to cook.

(S-2) Tā néng zuòfàn.

He is capable of cooking.

(S-3) Tā huì zuòfàn.

He knows how to cook.

(S-4) Tā kéyì zuòfàn.

He can cook.

(S-5) Tā yào zuòfàn.

He wants to cook.

(S-6) Tā xiǎng zuòfàn.

He intends to cook.

L. Substitution Drill: Make substitutions as indicated.

(T) Wáng Dànián xǐhuan hējiǔ.
(Wáng Dànián likes to drink.)

(S) Wáng Dànián ài hējiǔ.
(Wáng Dànián loves to drink.)

(T) loves to

DRILLS II



A. State that someone can (or likes, plans, wants, etc.) to do or not do something very well.

EX: Tā hěn huì zuò Zhōngguó fàn.

SUB	A	AV	V	Modifier	O
Wǒ		xǐhuan	hē		tāng
Nǐ		ài	zuò	Zhōngguó	fàn.
Tā		néng	xiě	Fàguó	zì.
Zhāng Xs.		huì	huà	Yīngguó	huàr.
Lǐ Xj.	bù	kéyi	mài	Měiguó	zìdiǎn.
Mǎ Tàitai		xiǎng	mǎi		jiǔ.
Wǒmen	dōu	yīnggāi	chī		cài.
Nǐmen		yào			

B. State that someone likes (plans or wants) to drink something or to look at something.

EX: Wǒ yào hē nǐ mǎi de jiǔ.

SUB	AV	V	Modifying Clause-de	O
Wǒ				
Nǐ	ài	hē	tā mǎi	jiǔ.
Tā	yào	kàn	nǐ mǎi	shū.
Wáng Xj.	xiǎng		Táiwān chū	de huàr.
Lǐ Tt.			Dàlù chū	dōngxi.
Mǎ Xs.			tā huà	

C. State the name (or nationality) of the person(s) doing a certain thing.

EX: Huàhuàr de rén dōu shì Zhōngguó rén.

Modifying Clause-de	SUB	A	EV	N
			shì	Zhōngguó rén.
		rén	xīng	Lǐ.
Xiě Zhōngguó zì de	tóngzhì	dōu		Zhāng.
Chī Xīcān	xiáojie			Wáng.
Chī Zhōngcān			jiào	Dànián.
Huàhuàr				Měilíng.

D. State that someone says (knows or has heard) something.

EX: Wǒ tīngshuo nèige dōngxī shì xuéxiào de.

SUB V O

NI		nèige dōngxī shì Lǐ Xiǎojié de.
Tā		nèijiàn yíshàng shì Wáng Tàitai de.
Wǒmen	shuō	tāmen qù Dōnghǎilóu chí Zhōngcān.
Nǐmen	zhīdao	Qīyuè sìhào shì tā shēngri.
Tāmen	tīngshuō	tāmen dōu kàn Dàlù chū de shū.
Wáng Tt.		wǒmen dōu bùxiě fántīzì.
Lǐ Xj.		tā gēge hěn néng hējiǔ.

E. Say that someone is going somewhere to do something.

EX: Tāmen qù Běijīng kàn fù-mǔ.

SUB V PW Purpose (V-O)

Tā			zuò	shénme?
NI			kàn	péngyou.
Wǒ		Běijīng		fù-mǔ.
Wǒmen		Niǔyuē		gēge, dìdi, jiějie, mèimei.
Nǐmen	qù	Dézhōu		shū.
Tāmen		Fàguó	mǎi	zìdiǎn.
Wáng Xs.		Qīngdǎo	mǎi	Xīcān.
Lǐ Tt.		Jiānádà	chī	mǎimai.
Liú Xj.		Hánguó	zuò	

F. State that someone doesn't want to (or should not) trouble someone else. Finish the sentence by choosing appropriately from the rest of the columns.

EX: Wǒ bùyinggāi máfan nín, kěshì wǒ yǒu yìběn hěn yào jīn de zìdiǎn xiǎng gěi nín kàn.

SUB Neg-AV máfan O kěshì Reasons

Wǒ				nín huì, wǒ búhuì.
NI	xiǎng		nín,	Wǒ xiǎng nèige hěn máfan.
Tā	yào		nǐ,	Nǐmen shuō nèige bùmáfan.
Wǒmen	bù yīnggāi máfan		nǐmen, kěshì	Lǐ Xj. huì zuò nèige.
Nǐmen	yīngdāng		Lǐ Xs.,	Mǎ Tz. néng zuò nèige.
Tāmen	xǐhuan		Mǎ Tz.,	

G.

											Wǒde
											songgěi wǒde
											Xiānsheng sònggěi wǒde.
											Huáng Xiānsheng sònggěi wǒde.
											Táiwān de Huáng Xiānsheng sònggěi wǒde.
											Shì Táiwān de Huáng Xiānsheng sònggěi wǒde.
											Píjiǔ shì Táiwān de Huáng Xiānsheng sònggěi wǒde.
											Wǔpíng píjiǔ shì Táiwān de Huáng Xiānsheng sònggěi wǒde.
											Nèi wǔpíng píjiǔ shì Táiwān de Huáng Xiānsheng sònggěi wǒde.

H.

												xīnwén
												baoshang de xīnwén
												Zhōngwén bàoshang de xīnwén
												gàosong Zhōngwén bàoshang de xīnwén
												gáosong tāde xuésheng Zhōngwén bàoshang de xīnwén
												gàosong tāde nǚxuésheng Zhōngwén bàoshang de xīnwén
												Lǎoshī gàosong tāde nǚxuésheng Zhōngwén bàoshang de xīnwén.
												Lǐ lǎoshī gàosong tāde nǚxuésheng Zhōngwén bàoshang de xīnwén.

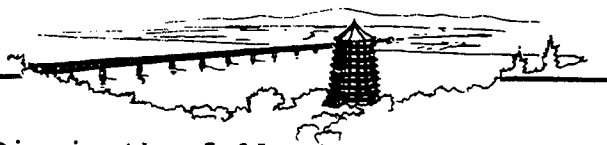
I.

													shípǔ
													Zhōngcān shípǔ
													Yīngwén Zhōngcān shípǔ
													chū de Yīngwén Zhōngcān shípǔ
													Niǔyuē chū de Yīngwén Zhōngcān shípǔ
													yìběn Niǔyuē chū de Yīngwén Zhōngcān shípǔ
													wǒ yìběn Niǔyuē chū de Yīngwén Zhōngcān shípǔ
													jiāogei wǒ yìběn Niǔyuē chū de Yīngwén Zhōngcān shípǔ
													Xiáojie jiāogei wǒ yìběn Niǔyuē chū de Yīngwén Zhōngcān shípǔ.
													Nèiwèi xiáojie jiāogei wǒ yìběn Niǔyuē chū de Yīngwén Zhōngcān shípǔ.
													Nèiwèi xiáojie jiāogei wǒ yìběn Niǔyuē chū de Yīngwén Zhōngcān shípǔ?

J. Review: Students: Close your books and see who can answer the following questions. The answers should be based on the above three G,H, and I.

1. Shéi sònggei wǒ wǔpíng píjiǔ?
2. Shéi gàosong xuésheng xīnwén?
3. Shéi jiāogei wǒ yībēn shípǔ?
4. Nèiwèi Huáng xiānsheng shì nǎrde rén?
5. Lǐ lǎoshī de xuésheng, shì nánxuésheng hái shì nǚ-xuésheng.
6. Nèibēn shípǔ shì Yīngwénde, hái shì Zhōngwénde?
7. Huáng Xiānsheng sònggei wǒde jiǔ, shì jiǔpíng hái shì wǔpíng?
8. Jiāogei wǒ yībēn shípǔ de nèiwèi xiǎojie xīng shénme? jiào shénme?
9. Lǐ lǎoshī shuō de xīnwén shì Zhōngwén bàoshàng de hái shì Yīngwén bàoshàng de.
10. Nèibēn shípǔ shì Zhōngcānde hái shì Xīcānde?

DICTIONATION EXERCISES



With books closed, write down in Pinyin the following sentences dictated by your teacher. Pay special attention to spelling and

1. Nǐmen sānge rén, shéi xiǎng mǎi zìdiǎn, shéi xiǎng mǎi dìtú?
你们三个人，谁想买字典，谁想买地图？
2. Nèi liǎngwèi xiǎojiě, shéi yào Zhōngwén de shípǔ?
那两位小姐，谁要中文的食谱？
3. Wǒmen qù nèige fúzhuāngdiàn, kànkan tāmen mài nǚrén de yīfu.
我们去那个服装店，看看他们卖不卖女人的衣服。
4. Tā fùqin bùxǐhuan hējiǔ, kěshì tā mǔqin xǐhuan hē. Nǐ kěyǐ mǎi yìpíng píjiǔ sònggei tāmen.
他父亲不喜欢喝酒，可是他母亲喜欢喝。你可以买一瓶啤酒送给他们。
5. Zhèi sānzhang shānshuǐhuà dōu hěn hǎokàn, kěshì yě hěn guǐ. Yǒu yìzhāng mài sānqiānguài.
这三张山水画儿都很好看，可是也很贵。有一张卖三千块。
6. Nèi liǎngjiā pùzi, yìjiā shì shūpù, yìjiā shì jiǔpù, nǐ yào mǎi shénme?
那两家铺子，一家是书铺，一家是酒铺，你要买什么？
7. Nèi liǎngjiā dōu bú mǎi xiǎoháizi de yīfu. Xiǎoháizi de yīfu zài nǎr mài ne?
那两家都不买小孩子的衣服。小孩子的衣服在哪儿卖呢？
8. Zhèijiā fúzhuāngdiàn hěn yǒumíng. Tāmen yǒu bùshǎo Fǎguó fúzhuāng, kěshì dōu bùpiányi.
这家服装店很有名。他们有不少法国服装，可是都不便宜。
9. Wáng Dànián zài nèige píxiédiàn gōngzuò. Měiyuè tā yǒu sānbǎi wǔshíkuài qián.
王大年在那个皮鞋店工作。每月他有三百五十块钱。
10. Wǒ bùxǐhuan huà shānshuǐhuà, wǒ xǐhuan huà dìtú. Yīnwei huà shānshuǐhuà hěn máfan.
我不喜欢画山水画儿，我喜欢画地图。因为画山水画很麻烦。
11. Tīngshuō nèi liǎngběn shípǔ dōu shì sānkuàibā yìběn. Nǐ xiǎng mǎi nǎiběn?
听说那两本食谱都是三块八一本。你想买哪本？

COMMUNICATION EXERCISES

Exercise 1

Talking about Cooking

Goal: To use huì, néng, and kéyi in appropriate situations. All three of these words can be translated into English as "can," but each can be further clarified: huì "to know how to," néng "to be capable of," and kéyi "to be permissible."

Procedure: The teacher will assign three interviewers to conduct a survey of the class about cooking.

The first interviewer will ask each student: Nǐ kéyi zuòfàn ma? "Can you cook?" Each student will decide whether to answer positively or negatively.

Wǒ kéyi zuòfàn.

I can cook.

Wǒ bùkényi zuòfàn.

I cannot cook.

The second interviewer will ask each student: Shéi huì zuòfàn? "Who knows how to cook?" Students may answer for themselves or may refer to a classmate.

Tā huì zuòfàn.

He knows how to cook.

Tā hěn huì zuòfàn.

He really knows how to cook.

The third interviewer will ask: Shéi néng zuòfàn? "Who is [now] capable of cooking?" Students will answer for themselves or refer to a classmate.

Tā néng zuòfàn.

He is capable of cooking.

Tā hěn néng zuòfàn.

She is very capable of cooking.

Exercise 2

Determining the Most Popular Gift

Goal: To practice in Chinese various terms for popular gifts and the pattern sònggèi, "to present to, to give as a gift to."

Procedure: The teacher will ask one interviewer to conduct a survey as to which is the most popular gift-item among the following: cookbooks (Chinese or American,) beer (Chinese or American,) cotton shoes (Chinese or American,) clothing, books and dictionaries.

The interviewer will ask each student two questions:

- (1) Nǐ xiǎng mǎi shénme? What do you wish to buy?
 (2) Nǐ xiǎng gěi shéi? To whom do you wish to give
 (that)?

Each student will select one of the six items above to answer first question.

- (1) Wǒ xiǎng mǎi shípǔ. I wish to buy a cookbook.
 (2) Wǒ sònggèi wǒ péngyou. I am going to present it to my
 friend.

(Students may arbitrarily select the recipient of the gift, such as a relative, the teacher, a boyfriend, or a girl friend.)

The interviewer will keep a record of items chosen by the students and after the survey announce the most popular gift item.

Exercise 3

Role Playing

Goal: To practice in Chinese the roles of customer and sales-clerk.

Procedure: Pair with another student for about five minutes and create a short dialogue between a customer and a sales clerk in a gift shop. Then enact the dialogue in front of the class. You may use some of the following sentences or you may create your own.

Sales-clerk:

Qīngwèn, nín xiǎng mǎi
shénme?

May I help you?

Wǒmen yǒu shānshuǐhuà.

We have landscape paintings.

Wǒmen yǒu bùxié.

We have cotton shoes.

Wǒmen yǒu Zhōngguó píjiǔ.

We have Chinese beer.

Wǒmen yǒu Zhōngguó cài de
shípǔ.

We have Chinese cookbooks.

Wǒmen yǒu Yīngwén de shípǔ.

We have cookbooks in English.

Wǒmen yǒu Zhōngwén de shípǔ.

We have cookbooks in Chinese.

Customer:

Nímende shípǔ (or whatever)
tài guǐ.

Your cookbooks (or whatever)
are too expensive.

Nímende bùxié hěn piányi.

Your cotton shoes are very
inexpensive.

Duōshao qián? (each or
specific number)

How much?

Wǒ búyào zhèige, wǒ yào
nèige.

I don't want this one, I want
that one.

Exercise 4

What Do You Say?

1. You have heard that someone's father is a businessman. Ask what business he does and whether or not he has a store. Also ask what he sells.
2. Someone is looking for a cookbook. Tell him this is a clothing store and they don't sell cookbooks. Tell him that he can buy one in a bookstore.
3. In a friend's house you are looking at a landscape painting. Ask your friend if she painted it. Say you've heard she knows how to paint and that it is beautiful.
4. Tell someone your boy likes to drink but his mother says he is too small (young) to drink liquor. Say she told him he could drink soft drinks.
5. Tell someone that this small store here sells many things. Ask him what he wants to buy, and say the store sells clothing, shoes, and also Chinese wines.
6. You are asked about wine. Say that Chinese wine is very famous. Tell the inquirer that he/she should buy two bottles as a gift for his/her father, that it is not expensive.
7. You are drawing. Tell someone it is a map of China, and you like to draw maps and paint pictures. Ask the individual where Shanghai is on the map.
8. Ask a soldier if he can cook. Tell him his girl friend said he could cook Chinese food. Ask if he has a Chinese cookbook. Say you like Chinese food.
9. Say you don't like this kind of clothes. You like the kind made in Mainland China. You think these were made in Taiwan.
10. Ask someone what this thing is, what it is called, and where it was produced. Is it Chinese or American, and what the price is per unit.
11. Some people ask you what American children drink. Tell them American children like soda, but you prefer water, and that water is very good.
12. Tell someone that previously you loved to drink but that your wife says you should not drink because it is too expensive. She says you should drink water.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

A. Chinese-English: Cover the Pinyin text below. Teacher: Randomly select sentences and read each one twice with a short pause between readings. Student: Say aloud the English equivalent. (translate)

1. Tā zhùzai chéngwàitou, yǒu shān yǒu shuǐ, hěn hǎokàn. Wǒ zhùzai chénglītou, méiyǒu shān yě méiyǒu shuǐ.
2. Wǒ tàitai xīhuan huàhuàr, hěn xīhuan huà shānshuǐhuàr. Tā xiǎng qù chéngwàitou huà shānshuǐhuàr.
3. Nèige shāngdiàn mài Zhōngguó cài de shípǔ. Tāmen yǒu Zhōngwéndē, yě yǒu Yīngwéndē.
4. Tā tàitai hěn xīhuan zuòfàn. Tā huì zuò Fàguó cài, yě huì zuò Yīngguó cài. Tā xiǎng xiě yìběn shípǔ.
5. Āndésēn hěn néng hējiǔ, tā yě huì hējiǔ. Wǒ sònggei tā liù-píng Zhōngguó píjiǔ.
6. Mǎi jiàn Zhōngguó yīshang hěn máfan. Mǎi yìshuāng Zhōngguó bùxié bùmáfan. Wǒ xiǎng mǎi liǎngshuāng bùxié.
7. Nèige yǒuming de rén zhùzai yíge yǒuming de fàndiànli. Nèige fàndiàn zài chéngwàitou de nèige shānlītou.
8. Zhèicì wǒmen dōu chī Zhōngguó fàn, yīnwei wǒmen dōu huì yòng kuàizi.
9. Chī Zhōngcān, chī Xīcān, hē tāng dōu kéyi yòng sháor. Hē shuǐ, hē qīshuǐ dōu búyòng sháor.
10. Wǒ yào mǎi yífèn(r) Zhōngguó bào. Bàoshang yǒu hěn duō shāngdiàn de xīnwén. Tāmen de dōngxi dōu hěn piányi.
11. Nèige màibàode shì Zhōngguó rén. Tā mài sānzhōng Zhōngguó bào, liǎngzhōng Měiguó bào.
12. Wǒ fù-mǔ xīhuan kàn Měiguó bào. Wǒ zìjǐ yě xīhuan kàn Měiguó bào.
13. Tīngshuō tā měitiān mài hěn duō Zhōngguó bào, yě mài bùshǎo Měiguó bào.
14. Wǒ xiǎng mǎi liǎngzhāng Měiguó dìtú, yìzhāng Zhōngguó dìtú, sānzhī Zhōngguó máobǐ.
15. Cóngqián Zhōngguó rén xiě Zhōngguó zì dōu yòng máobǐ.

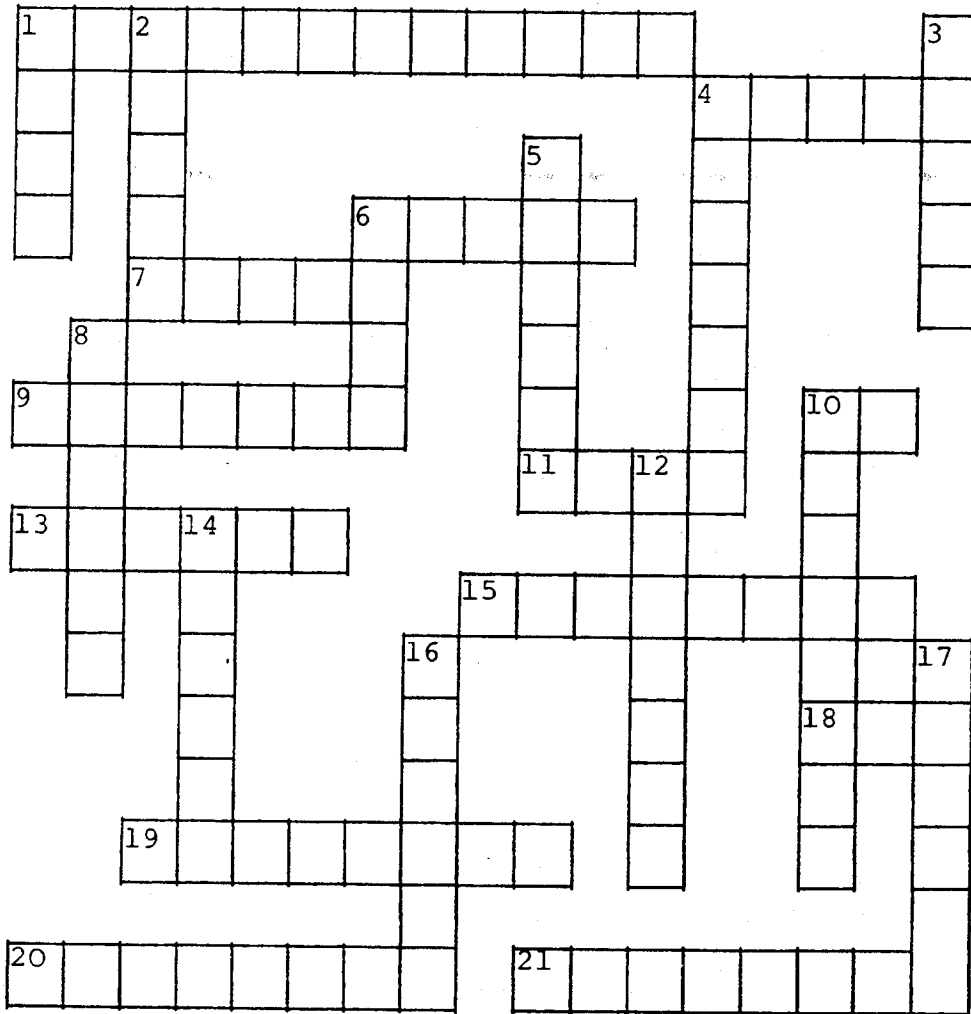
B. Chinese-English: Fluency Exercise. Student: Read aloud the sentences in Pinyin below concentrating on fluency, pronunciation and tones. Then give your teacher the English equivalent for each sentence.

1. Wáng Dànián yào qù Zhōngguóchéng. Tā xiǎng mǎi Hàn-Yīng zì-diǎn, yě xiǎng mǎi liǎngzhī Zhōngguó máobī.
2. Wǒmen dōu huì xiě Zhōngguó zì. Jiǎntīzì gēn fántīzì wǒmen dōu huì xiě.
3. Báiyuè shíwǔhào shì Mǎ Mínglǐde shēngrì. Wǒ xiǎng sònggei tā yīshuāng Zhōngguó bùxié.
4. Shéi búhuì yòng kuàizi? Shéi búhuì yòng dǎozi, chāzi? Shéi búhuì yòng sháor?
5. Wǒ zhīdao wǒmende bānzhǎng búhuì yòng kuàizi. Wǒmen yīnggāi gěi tā dǎozi, chāzi.
6. Tā xǐhuan huà shānshuǐhuà. Tā yīnggāi zhùzai chéngwàitou. Chéngwàitou yǒu shān, yě yǒu shuǐ.
7. Wǒ búhuì huàhuà, kěshì wǒ xǐhuan kàn huà, yě xǐhuan kàn yǒumíng de huà.
8. Nèiběn Yīngwén de Zhōngguó shípǔ, wǔkuài sānmáo_yìběn. Zhèiběn Zhōngwénde mài sānkuàiwǔ. Liǎngběn yíngòng bākuàibā.
9. Tīngshuō chénglǐtou de nèige xuéxiào hěn yǒumíng. Nèige xuéxiào hěn dà. Xiānsheng dōu hěn hǎo.
10. Nèijiā shāngdiàn mài Rìběn fúzhuāng. Yǒu nǚrén de fúzhuāng, kěshì hěn guǐ.
11. Zhèijiā shāngdiàn mài nánrén yīfu, nánrén xié, búmài nǚrén yīfu, yě búmài nǚrén xié.
12. Nèige pùzi mài xié. Nánrénde, nǚrénde, nánháizide, nǚháizide dōu yǒu.
13. Tāmende fù-mǔ dōu xǐhuan hē Zhōngguó_píjiǔ, wǒ xiǎng mǎi bāpíng sònggei tāmende fù-mǔ. Wǒ zìjǐ bùhē.
14. Wǒ zhīdao nǐ bùxǐhuan zuòfàn. Wǒ yě zhīdao nǐ bùxǐhuan zuò yīshang.
15. Duìbuqǐ, qǐngwèn, nín néng bunéng gěi wǒ wǔkuài qián?

C. English-Chinese: Teacher: Randomly assign sentences to each student. Student: First read the sentence carefully, then translate into Chinese. Concentrate on word order, fluency, tones and pronunciation.

1. That store (store selling paintings) is very famous. They have a very pretty painting. They want \$2,000 for it.
2. I don't like to cook. It is too much trouble. I like to go to restaurants to eat.
3. Fang Baolan likes to paint pictures very much. This famous store has five pictures which she painted.
4. I don't want to buy the Chinese language (version) of the Chinese cookbook, I want the English language (version). I want to buy several copies to give to friends.
5. You should buy three bottles of Chinese beer: one to give to your wife, one to give to me, and one for yourself.
6. Your parents give you things; what do you give to them? You should buy a bottle of alcoholic drink for your father and a pair of cotton shoes for your mother.
7. I don't like to buy Chinese clothing because it is too much trouble. Buying leather shoes is no trouble. They have many leather shoes in this shoe store.
8. Outside the city there is a famous hotel. It is very expensive.
9. It is not permissible to cook in the hotel, but we can drink alcoholic beverages. How about our buying two bottles of Chinese beer?
10. There are very few hotels outside the city but many inside the city. Many hotels do not have restaurants.
11. Each time we eat together you pay. This time I am going to pay.
12. This time (when) we go to the restaurant to eat, we'll all use chopsticks. We all know how to use them, and we all like to use them very much.
13. I don't like to drink water, but I like to drink soft drinks. I am not permitted to drink alcoholic beverages.

ENRICHMENT



ACROSS

- 1. clothing store
- 4. full of recipes
- 6. a bad habit
- 7. tell (someone)
- 9. painting
- 10. picture word
- 11. auxiliary verb
- 13. _____ on the Mainland
- 15. a _____ of shoes
- 18. mài _____ rén
- 19. I heard(it said)that ...
- 20. scenery
- 21. Mainland characters

DOWN

- 1. mom and pop
- 2. a kind of
- 3. not much
- 4. four (painting)
- 5. a piece of (clothing)
- 6. picture
- 8. opposite of not much
- 10. Chinese
- 12. girl
- 14. read in the morning
- 16. a refreshing drink
- 17. a writing instrument

LESSON 10

INTRODUCTION



This lesson deals with:

- A review of noun clauses of a general nature.
- VO-de serving as a noun (discreet usage).
- Use of SV as a modifier modifying nouns.
- Use of nouns to modify nouns.
- Use of time words.
- Choice-type questions (V háishi V).



Tāmen Gōngyùde Wòfáng

OBJECTIVES



Upon completion of this lesson you will be able to:

- a. Inquire about renting furniture and/or an apartment.
- b. Inquire as to the suitability (age or value) of items for rent or purchase.
- c. Specify a time when the purchase will be or was made.

GLOSSARY



1. -bǎ 一把 M: (generally for chairs or many things with handles.)
2. -bàn 一半 NU: (and) half
Zhèi shì liǎngkuàibàn. (This is \$2.50.)
- a. bàn- 半— NU: one half of
Zhèi shì bàнкуài qián. (This is a half-dollar.)
Zhèr yǒu liǎngge bàнкуài qián. (There are two half-dollars here.)
3. cái 才 ADV: only, merely, just (less than expected)
Zhèige cái mài wǔfēn qián. (This sells for only five cents.)
4. chūzū 出租 V: to rent
Nǐmēn yǒu shénme dōngxī chūzū? (What do you have for rent?)
5. chūfáng 厨房 N: kitchen (M: -jiān)
6. chuáng 床 N: bed (M: -zhāng)
Tā yào mǎi yìzhāng dà chuáng. (He wants to buy a big bed.)
Tā tàitai yào mǎi liǎngzhāng xiǎo chuáng. (His wife wants to buy two small beds.)
7. děi 得 AV: must, ought to, have to
Nǐ děi xiě Zhōngguó zì. (You must write Chinese characters.)
8. dēng 灯 N: lamp (M: -zhǎn)
9. dòng 栋 M: (for houses and buildings)
10. fàntīng 饭厅 N: dining room (M: -jiān)
- a. -tīng 一厅 BF/N: hall
11. fángjiān 房间 N: room
12. gōngyù 公寓 N: apartment, apartment house, rooming house (M: -dòng)
Yǒu wǔshíge rén zhùzài nàdòng gōngyù litou. (There are 50 persons living at that apartment house.)

13. hái 还 A: still, in addition
 Wǒ hái yào mǎi liùběn zì-diǎn.
 (I still want to buy six dictionaries.)
14. hǎojíle 好极了 IE: extremely good, wonderful
 a. -jíle 一极了 BF: extremely
 Hú Měilíng Tóngzhì hǎokàn-jíle.
 (Comrade Hú Měilíng is extremely pretty.)
15. jiājù 家具 N: furniture (M: jiàn, tào)
 a. jiājùdiàn 家具店 N: furniture store (M: jiā)
16. jiān 间 M: (for rooms)
17. jiù 旧 SV: to be old, to be used (opposite of xīn: to be new)
 Tāmende jiājù dōu hěn jiù.
 (All of their furniture is very old.)
18. kètīng 客厅 N: parlor, living room (M: -jiān)
19. lái 来 V: to come, to come to
 Wǒ lái mǎi jiājù.
 Tā yào lái Měiguó.
 (I come to buy furniture.)
 (He wants to come to the United States.)
20. shōuqián 收钱 VO: to collect money
 a. shōu 收 V: to collect, to receive, to accept
 b. shōuqián de 收钱的 N: cashier
 Nèige shōuqián de bùshōu Zhōngguó qián, shōu Měiguó qián.
 (That cashier does not accept Chinese money, she accepts U.S. money.)
21. shūjiàzi 书架子 N: bookshelf
22. shūzhuō(r) 书桌儿 N: desk (M: -zhāng)
23. suàn 算 V: to consider, to calculate, to figure out
 Wǒmen suànsuan yígòng duōshao qián.
 Wǔkuài qián, búsuàn guì.
 (Let's figure out how much money altogether.)
 (Five dollars can't be considered expensive.)
24. wòfáng 卧房 N: bedroom (M: -jiān)

25. xiàgeyuè 下个月 TW: next month
 a. shànggeyuè 上个月 TW: last month
 b. zhègeyuè 这个月 TW: this month
 c. xiàcì 下次 N: next time
 d. shàngcì 上次 N: last time
26. (xǐ)zǎofáng (洗)澡房 N: bathroom
 a. xǐzǎo 洗澡 VO: to take a bath
27. xiē 些 NU: several, some
 a. zhèxiē 这些 SP-NU: these
 b. nèixiē 那些 SP-NU: those
 Wǒ xǐhuan zhèxiē, bùxǐ-
 huān nèixiē. (I like these [but] don't like those.)
28. xīn 新 SV: to be new (opposite of jiù: to be old)
29. xūyào 需要 V/N: to need, requirement/ need
 Wǒ xūyào qián hě péngyou.
 Wǒde xūyào bú jiù shì qián. (I need money and friends.)
 (My need is not money only.)
30. yǐzi 椅子 N: chair (M: -bǎ)
 Wǒ xūyào sìbǎ yǐzi. (I need four chairs.)
31. zhēn 真 A: really, truly
 Nèibǎ yǐzi sānkùaiqián,
 zhēn piányi. (That chair is \$3.00, really inexpensive.)
32. zhuōzi 桌子 N: table (M: -zhāng)
 Tā yào sānzhāng zhuōzi. (He wants three tables.)
33. zū 租 V: to rent
 a. zūqián 租钱 N: rental money
 Wǒ yào zū nǐmende gōngyù,
 duōshao zūqián? (I want to rent your apartment, how much?)

COMMUNICATIVE EXCHANGES



ZŪ Jiājù - Renting Furniture

FRAME 1

Two DLI CM students are looking for furniture. B's wife is arriving soon.

- | | | |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | <p>B: Wǒ tàitai xiàgeyuè lái.
Wǒ zū de gōngyù méiyǒu jiājù,
děi mǎi.</p> | <p>My wife is coming next month.
The apartment I have rented
is unfurnished, (so) I must
buy some furniture.</p> |
|---|--|--|

Notes:

1. "Time When"(MA). Xiàgeyuè, "next month," zhèigeyuè, "this month," and shànggeyuè, "last month" show either a point of time or a given period of time. It comes before the main verb, and either before or after the subject.

Wǒ tàitai xiàgeyuè lái. My wife is coming next month.

Shànggeyuè tā búzài Shànghǎi. Last month he wasn't in Shanghai.

Tā zhèigeyuè zài Shànghǎi. He is in Shanghai this month.

Verbs of Motion and Direction. Lái, "to come," a verb of motion and direction, indicates motion towards the speaker. Lái is the opposite of another verb of motion and direction: qù, "to go."

-----> lái (motion toward the speaker)
(motion away from the speaker) qù ----->

Modifying Clause with -de. Here wǒ zū de, "I rented," is a clause (Subject Verb-de) modifying the noun gōngyù, "apartment." The result is wǒ zū de gōngyù, "the apartment that I rented."

FRAME 2

- | | | |
|---|---|--|
| 2 | <p>A. Zhèijiā jiājùdiàn hěn dà.
Tāmen mǎi de jiājù yǒu xīnde,
yě yǒu jiùde.</p> | <p>This furniture store is very
large. They have both new
and used furniture for sale.</p> |
|---|---|--|

FRAME 2 (Continued)

- | | | |
|---|---|--|
| 3 | B: <u>Chuáng</u> , (wǒ) mǎi xīnde.
<u>Zhuōzi</u> , <u>yǐzi</u> , kéyi mǎi jiùde. | I want to buy a new bed. As to tables and chairs, I may buy used ones. |
|---|---|--|

Notes:

2&3 A Stative Verb Modifying a Noun. There are three possibilities: (1) without -de; (2) with -de; (3) with -de and the modified noun understood. Examples:

- | | |
|---|--|
| (1) xīn jiājù | new furniture |
| (2) hěn xīn de jiājù | very new furniture |
| (3) Nèi liǎngzhāng shū
zhuō, xīnde piányi,
jiùde guì. | Of those two desks, the new one is inexpensive, and the used one is expensive. |

Frame 3

- | | | |
|---|--|---|
| 4 | A: Nǐ kàn, tāmen yě <u>chūzū</u> jiājù. Sānge <u>fángjiān</u> de jiājù, yíge yuè de <u>zūqián</u> <u>cái</u> wúshíwǔkuài; zhēn piányi. | Look, they also rent furniture. The furniture for three rooms rents for only \$55 a month. It's really inexpensive. |
| 5 | B: <u>Cái</u> wúshíwǔkuài, búsuàn guì. Dōu yǒu <u>xiě</u> shénme jiājù? | Only fifty five dollars can't be considered expensive. What furniture do they have? |
| 6 | A: Yǒu <u>kètīngde</u> , <u>fàntīngde</u> , hé <u>wòfángde</u> . | They have living room, dining room, and bedroom furniture. |
| 7 | B: Wǒ xiǎng kànkàn tāmen chūzū de jiājù. | I would like to see the furniture they have for rent. |
| 8 | A: Hǎo a. Nǐ kàn (pointing at the furniture display) tāmen de chuáng, zhuōzi, yǐzi dōu shì xīnde. | Good. Look! (pointing at the furniture display) All of their beds, tables, and chairs are new. |

Notes:

4. Sānge fángjiān de jiājù, "furniture for three rooms." The phrase sānge fángjiān, "three rooms," is a noun phrase modifier

serving as a measure. Furniture is usually measured by pieces (jiàn) or sets (tào). Here it is measured by rooms. Other examples of noun-phrases serving as measures:

Wūkuài qián de cài.

Five-dollars' worth of vegetables.

yīnián de zūqián

Rental for a year

6 A Noun Modifying Another Noun. There are three possibilities: (1) with -de; (2) without -de; and (3) with -de and the modified noun understood. Examples:

(1) jiějie de zìdiǎn

older sister's dictionary

lǎoshī de fěnbǐ

the teacher's chalk

(2) Zhōngguó zì

Chinese characters

tāngsháo

soup spoon

(3) Nèitào jiājù shì

That set of furniture is for

kètīngde.

the living room.

Zhèitào jiājù shì

This set of furniture is for

fàntīngde.

the dining room.

When a noun phrase shows possession, as in example (1), the particle -de is usually used. When an adjective or noun that functions attributively and when it modifies a noun in a noun phrase, as in example (2), the particle -de is not used.

8 Hǎo a, "good," is a very common reply showing agreement or approval of a proposal.

FRAME 4

- | | | |
|----|---|--|
| 9 | B: Wǒmen hái xūyào yíge shūjiàzi hé yìzhāng shūzhuō. | In addition, we need a bookshelf and a desk. |
| 10 | A: Shūjiàzi hé shūzhuō tāmen dōu yǒu. Nǐ yào zū, hái shì yào mǎi ne? | They have both bookshelves and desks. Do you want to rent or buy? |
| 11 | B: Chuáng, zhuōzi, yǐzi, zhèixiē jiājù wǒ dōu yào zū. Shūzhuō shàngtōu hái xūyào ge <u>dēng</u> , tāmen yǒu ma? | I want to rent all these things: bed, tables, and chairs. I still need a lamp on the desk. Do they have any? |
| 12 | A: Tāmen yǒu. Cǎi liùkuài-bàn yíge. | They have. They are only \$6.50 apiece. |

Notes:

11 Ge, is the short form of yíge, "unit." The same situation occurs with zhèige, "this one," nèige, "that one," and něige, "which one," the short forms of zhèi yíge, nèi yíge and něi yíge respectively.

FRAME 5

- | | | |
|----|---|---|
| 13 | B: <u>Hǎojíle</u> . <u>Shōuqián</u> de zài nǎr? | Excellent. Where is the cashier? |
| 14 | A: Zài qiántou <u>shōu</u> qián ne. | The cashier is now in the front (part of the store) collecting money. |

Notes:

13 Hǎojíle, "excellent." This compliment is an idiomatic expression. In Chinese the suffix -jíle, "extremely," follows the stative verb. Other examples:

hǎokànjíle
máifánjíle

extremely pretty/handsome
extremely troublesome

Modifying Clause with -de as a Noun. In the second sentence, No. 13, the noun rén is understood. Thus, shōuqiánde, "the one who collects money," becomes a noun: "the cashier."

14 Qiántou, "front of." In Chinese this expression can be used for either (1) the front part inside a place or (2) in front and outside of a place. In this lesson, the cashier is still in the store, but in the front part.

对话

FRAME 1

- | | | |
|---|----------------------------|---|
| 1 | B: 我太太下个月来, 我租的公寓没有家具, 得买。 | My wife is coming next month. The apartment I have rented is unfurnished, (so) I must buy some furniture. |
|---|----------------------------|---|

FRAME 2

- | | | |
|---|------------------------------|---|
| 2 | A: 这家家具店很大。他们卖的家具有的新的, 也有旧的。 | This furniture store is very large. They have both new and used furniture for sale. |
| 3 | B: 床, (我)买新的。桌子、椅子, 可以买旧的。 | I want to buy a new bed. As to tables and chairs, I may buy used ones. |

FRAME 3

- | | | |
|---|---|---|
| 4 | A: 你看, 他们也出租家具。三个房间的家具, 一个月的租钱才五十五块; 真便宜。 | Look, they also rent furniture. The furniture for three rooms rents for only \$55 a month. It's really inexpensive. |
| 5 | B: 才五十五块, 不算贵。都有些什么家具? | Only fifty five dollars can't be considered expensive. What furniture do they have? |
| 6 | A: 有客厅的、饭厅的、和卧室的。 | They have living room, dining room, and bedroom furniture. |
| 7 | B: 我想看看他们出租的家具。 | I would like to see the furniture they have for rent. |
| 8 | A: 好啊。你看! 他们的床、桌子、椅子都是新的。 | Good. Look! (pointing at the furniture display) All of their beds, tables, and chairs are new. |

FRAME 4

- | | | |
|----|-------------------------------------|--|
| 9 | B: 我们还需要一个书架子和一张书桌。 | In addition we need a bookshelf and a desk. |
| 10 | A: 书架子和书桌他们都有。你要租, 还是要买呢? | They have both bookshelves and desks. Do you want to rent, or buy? |
| 11 | B: 床、桌子、椅子这些家具我都要租。书桌上头还需要个灯, 他们有吗? | I want to rent all these things: bed, tables, and chairs. I still need a lamp on the desk. Do they have any? |
| 12 | A: 他们有。才六块半一个。 | They have. They are only \$6.50 a piece. |

FRAME 5

- | | | |
|----|----------------|---|
| 13 | B: 好极了。收钱的在哪儿? | Excellent. Where is the cashier? |
| 14 | A: 在前头收钱呢。 | The cashier is now in the front (part of the store) collecting money. |

SUMMARY



Frame 1

a. When a time-when phrase is used, it shows, either as a point of time or a given period, that an action was, is, or will be taking place.

Wǒ mèimei xiàgeyuè lái. My younger sister is coming
next month.

Tāde nǚháizi shànggeyuè
zhùzài wǒ jiā. His daughter stayed at my
place last month.

b. Lái, "to come," a verb of motion and direction always indicates action towards the speaker.

Tā lái zhèr chīfàn. He is coming here to eat.

c. A modifying clause with -de (of general type) is a subject-verb plus -de modifying a noun, e.g., Ta mǎi de shūzhūor "the desk that he bought."

Frame 2 & 3

a. Both a stative verb modifying a noun and a noun modifying a noun can appear in these forms: (1) without -de, (2) with -de, and (3) with -de but without the noun which is understood.

SV (1) xīn shūjiàzi	a new bookshelf
(2) hěn jiù de jiājù	very old furniture
(3) nèiběn piányi de	that cheap (book)

N (1) Déguó huà	German speech
(2) wǒ gēgede kètīng	my older brother's living room
(3) zhèiběn Yīngwénde	this English book

b. Hǎo a, "good," is a very common reply to show agreement or approval of a proposal.

Frame 4

When the measure ge "a" is used alone, it is the short form of yige "one."

Wǒ hái yào mǎi ge shū-
jiàzi. I still have to buy a book-
shelf.

Frame 5

-Jile is a descriptive complement which when added to a stative verb, gives it the meaning of being "extremely ..." e.g., hǎojile (extremely good.)

DRILLS I



A. Noun Modifying Drill: Combine the teacher's nouns on the left with those having the same number on the right either with or without the particle -de, as appropriate.

(T) 1. qián	1. Zhōngguó	(S) 1. Zhōngguó qián
2. gēge	2. qiānbǐ	2. gēgede qiānbǐ

B. Substitution Drill: Make substitutions as indicated.

(T) Sānge fángjiān de jiājù, měi yuè de zūqián cái wūshíwǔkuài. (The monthly rent for three rooms of furniture is only \$55.00.)	(S) Sìge fángjiān de jiājù, měiyuè de zūqián cái qīshíkuài. (The monthly rent for four rooms of furniture is only \$70.00.)
---	--

(T) four rooms of, \$70.00

C. Transformation Drill: Itemize the rooms on the list your teacher reads.

(T) Sānge fángjiān de gōngyù
(Three-room apartment)

(S) Yǒu yíge fángjiān shì kètīng, yíge shì zǎofáng, yíge shì wòfáng.
(There is one living room, one bathroom, and one bedroom.)

D. Response Drill: Respond to the teacher's statements with hái xūyào "still need."

(T) Nǐmen yǒu yìběn Hànyǐng zìdiǎn.

(You have a Chinese-English dictionary.)

(T) English-Chinese Dictionary

(S) Wǒmen yǒu yìběn Hànyǐng zìdiǎn, kěshì hái xūyào yìběn Yǐng-Hàn zìdiǎn.

(We have a Chinese-English dictionary, but still need an English-Chinese dictionary.)

E. Change the teacher's statement by adding the particle -de after either the first N or the second N, whichever is appropriate.

(T) Tā zū de shì yǒu jiājù
gōngyù.
(The apartment he rents
is furnished.)

(S) Tā zū de shì yǒu jiājù de
gōngyù.
(The apartment he rents
is furnished.)

F. Substitution Drill: Make substitutions as indicated.

(T) Nǐmen lǎojiā yǒuqián de
rén duō bùduō?
(Are there many rich
people in your hometown?)

(S) Nǐmen lǎojiā zū gōngyù de
rén duō bùduō?
(Are there many people
who rent apartments in your
hometown?)

(T) people who rent apartments

G. Response Drill: Respond to the teacher's question with two different statements.

(T) Tāmen chūzū de jiājù dōu
shì xīnde ma?
(Is all the furniture
they are renting new?)
cue: jiùde

(S) Tāmen chūzū de jiājù, yǒu
xīnde, yě yǒu jiùde.
(Some of the furniture
they are renting is new; some
is old.)

H. Expansion Drill: Add a statement including a noun to the teacher's statements. The added statement should contain a verb, an object and the particle -de. For example, màibào "paper dealer."

(T) Tā mài bào.
(He sells newspapers.)

(S) Tā mài bào; tā shì mài-
bào de.
(He sells newspapers; he
is a newspaper dealer.)

I. Transformation Drill: Convert the time-word měigeyuè, "every month," in the teacher's statements to shànggeyuè, "last month," zhèigeyuè, "this month," and xiàgeyuè, "next month."

(T) Měigeyuè tā yǒu wūshikuài qián.
(He has \$50.00 every month.)

(S) Shànggeyuè tā yǒu wūshikuài qián. Zhèigeyuè tā yě yǒu wūshikuài qián. Xiàgeyuè tā hái yǒu wūshikuài qián.
(He had \$50.00 last month. He also has \$50.00 this month. He will still have \$50.00 next month.)

J. Response Drill: Respond to the teacher's questions by using Duìbuqǐ, Wǒ zìjǐ "Sorry, I ... myself."

(T) Wǒ kéyǐ yòng nǐ zhèiběn zìdiǎn ma?
(May I use this dictionary of yours?)

(S) Duìbuqǐ, zhèiběn zìdiǎn wǒ zìjǐ yào yòng.
(Sorry, I want to use this one myself.)

K. Transformation Drill: Change the teacher's statement into another one using the shǐ...de pattern with "last month."

(T) Wǒ tàitai xiàgeyuè lái.
(My wife is coming next month.)

(S) Wǒ tàitai shǐ shànggeyuè lái de.
(My wife came last month.)

L. Transformation Drill: Convert the teacher's statement into two statements making one transposed object "new" and another "old."

(T) Chuáng gēn shūzhuō wǒmen dēi mǎi xīnde.
(We must buy new beds and desks.)

(S) Chuáng wǒmen dēi mǎi xīnde, shūzhuō kéyǐ mǎi jiùde.
(We must buy a new bed, but we can buy an old desk.)

M. Transformation Drill: Convert the teacher's statement into a question using xiě.

(T) Tā yǒu Yīng-Hàn zìdiǎn yě
yǒu Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn.

(He has an English-Chinese
dictionary, and he also has a
Chinese-English dictionary.)

(S) Tā dōu yǒu xiě shénme zì-
diǎn?

(What dictionaries has
he?)

DRILLS II



A. Say there are two items of merchandise which you can find in a certain store.

EX: Zhèijia shāngdiàn yǒu hěnduō Zhōngguó fúzhūāng, Zhōngguó bùxié.

SUB yǒu hěnduō OBJ OBJ

Zhèijia shūdiàn	yǒu hěnduō	Zhōngguó shū,	Zhōngguó bào.
fànguǎnr		cài,	jiǔ.
jiājùdiàn		jiājù,	dēng.
pùzi		kuàizi,	sháo.

B. Say that he/she likes to do one thing very much and also likes to do something else very much.

EX: Tā hěnxǐhuan huàhuàr, yě hěnxǐhuan kànkuàr.

SUB hěnxǐ AV VO yě hěnxǐ AV VO

Tā	hěnxǐhuan	kànshū,	yě hěnxǐhuan	mǎi shū.
		zuòfàn,		chīfàn.
		mǎi yīfu,		zuò yīfu.
		hējiǔ,		mǎi jiǔ.
		kànshū,		xiě shū.

C. Say that you intend to do something but don't have the necessary instruments to do it.

EX: Wǒ xiǎng zuòfàn, kěshì méiyǒu shípǔ.

SUB AV VO kěshì méiyǒu OBJ

Wǒ	xiǎng	mǎi jiājù,	kěshì méiyǒu	qián.
		huàhuàr,		bǐ.
		mǎi xīn yīfu,		qián.
		kànshū,		dēng.
		xiě Zhōngguó zì		máobǐ.

D. Say that you don't intend to buy a certain thing, and give the reason why.

EX: Wǒ bùxiǎng mǎi jiǔ, yīnwei wǒ bùxǐhuan hējiǔ.

SUB bu-AV VO yīnwei SUB bu-AV VO

Wǒ bùxiǎng mǎi	shū, shípǔ, kuàizi, máobī,	yīnwei wǒ bùxǐhuan	kànshū. zuòfàn. yòng kuàizi. xiě Zhōngguó zì
----------------	-------------------------------------	--------------------	---

E. Say that he/she likes to do something and that he/she says that it is very good.

EX: Tā ài chī Zhōngguó fàn. Tā shuō, Zhōngguó fàn hěn hǎochī.

SUB AV VO SUB V SUB SV

Tā ài hē	mǎi Zhōngguó huàr. hē Zhōngguó jiǔ. píjiǔ. mǎi xīn yīfu. mǎi jiù jiājù.	Tā shuō, Zhōngguó huàr hěn hǎokàn. Zhōngguó jiǔ hǎohē. píjiǔ yǒumíng. xīn yīfu hǎokàn. jiù jiājù piányi.
----------	---	--

F. Say that certain things altogether are only worth so much, and that they are not expensive.

EX: Zhèixiē dōngxì yìgòng cái shíwǔkuài qián. Búsuàn guǐ.

SP-xiē SUB yìgòng NU-M N Bu-ADV SV

Zhèixiē	shū jiājù cài huàr jiǔ	yìgòng cái	shíwǔkuài qián. wūshíkuài sānshíkuài shíèrkuài bákuài	Bùhěn guǐ. Bútài guǐ.
---------	------------------------------------	------------	---	--------------------------

G. Ask if you will give something to this or that person.

EX: Qián,* jiāogěi lǎoshī háishi jiāogei banzhǎng?

DIR 0 V-gei IND 0 háishi V-gei IND 0

Shū,	jiāogei	nǐ	háishi	jiāogei	tā?
Shípǔ,	sònggei	Zhāng Xiáojie	sònggei	Zhào Xiáojie?	
Huàr,	màigei	Wáng Xiānsheng	màigei	Zhōu Xiānsheng?	
Dōngxi		Mǎ Tóngzhī		Liú Tóngzhī?	
Shūzhuō		Bǎolán		Měili?	

* Subject (wǒ/nǐ) omitted.

H. Say that there are two kinds of the things which are over there at their place.

EX: Tāmen nèrde bào, yǒu Zhōngwénde, yě yǒu Yīngwénde.

PN PW-de N V Noun phrase yě V Noun phrase

	shū,		jiǎntīzide		fántīzide.
	shūzhuō,		xīnde		jiùde.
Tāmen nèrde	jiājù	yǒu	zude	yě yǒu	mǎide.
	huàr		piányide		guǐde.
	jiājù		fàntīngde		kètīngde.
	gōngyù		yìjiān wòfángde		sānjiān wòfángde.

I. Say that you intend to or can do something, but won't do it, because it is too much trouble to do.

EX: Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yīfu, bùxiǎng mǎi bùxiē, mǎi bùxiē tài máfan.

SUB AV VO bu-AV VO

xiǎng	mǎi	huàr,	bùxiǎng	huàhuàr,
xīhuan	xiě	jiǎntīzi,	bùxīhuan	xiě fántīzi,
Wǒ	huì	yòng dāo-chā,	bùhuì	yòng kuàizi,
yào	zū	jiājù,	bùyào	mǎi jiājù,
ài	zuò	Měiguó fàn,	búài	zuò Zhōngguó fàn,

SUB ADV SV

huàhuàr	
xiě fántīzi	
yòng kuàizi	tài máfan.
mǎi jiājù	
zuò Zhōngguó fàn	

J. Say that this relative of yours really likes to/can do something, so you want to buy him/her that thing as a present.

EX: Wǒ tàitai de fùqin hěn néng hējiǔ, wǒ yào mǎi liǎngpíng jiǔ sònggei tā.

SUB ADV AV VO

mǔqin	hěn	ài	zuòfàn,
gēge		xīhuān	kànhuàr,
Wǒ	jiějie	huì	huàhuàr,
mèimei		huì	xiě Zhōngguó zì,
dīdi		ài	kànshū

AV V DIR-OBJ V IND-OBJ

yìběn	shípǔ	
sānzhāng	huàr	
wǒ yào mǎi sānzhi	bǐ	sònggei tā.
yìzhǐ	máobǐ	
liǎngběn	shu	

DICTIONATION EXERCISES



With book closed, write down in Pinyin the following sentences dictated by your teacher. Pay special attention to spelling and tones.

1. Nèijia jiājùdiàn de xīn jiājù tài guì. Wǒ bùmǎi xīnde, wǒ yào zū jiùde. 那家家具店的新家具太贵。我不买新的，我要租旧的。
2. Kètīng de jiājù hěn hǎokàn. Fàntīng hé wòfáng de jiājù dōu hěn xīn. 客厅的家具很好看。饭厅和卧房的家具都很新。
3. Wǒmende měige fángjiān dōu xūyào yīzhāng zhuōzi hé yīzhǎn dēng. 我们的每个房间都需要一张桌子和一盏灯。
4. Nèige shōuqián de zài qiántou shōuqián ne. 那个收钱的在前头收钱呢。
5. Zhèidòng gōngyù de zūqián wǔbǎikuài yīge yuè, búsuàn piányi. 这栋公寓的租金五百块一个月，不算便宜。
6. Nèijiā jiājùdiàn de dà chuáng cái shíwǔkuàibàn yīzhāng, zhēn piányi. 那家家具店的大床才十五块半一张，真便宜。
7. Lǐ Lǎoshī shì shànggeyuè lái de. Tā shuō tā xiàgeyuè huì jiāo nǐmen. 李老师是上个月来的。他说他下个月会教你们。
8. Zhèi yī bān de xuésheng búzài xuéxiàoli zhù, tāmen dōu zhù gōngyù. 这一班的学生不在学校里住，他们都住公寓。
9. Wǒmen xūyào shíbǎ yǐzi, shíge shūjiàzi. 我们需要十把椅子，十个书架子。
10. Hǎojíle! Nǐ mèimei hái zài chénglǐ. Nǐmen yīkuàir lái, hǎo buhǎo? 好极了！你妹妹还在城里。你们一块儿来，好不好？
11. Zhèxiē jiājù shì xīnde, nèixiē jiājù shì jiùde. 这些家具是新的，那些家具是旧的。

COMMUNICATION EXERCISES

Exercise 1

Role Playing

Goal: To practice in Chinese what you have learned in Lesson 10 about renting or buying furniture in a make-believe situation.

Procedure: The teacher will assign two students to be the customers and one student to be the salesclerk.

The salesclerk should include the following sentences:

1. May I ask you, do you want to buy or rent furniture? (a)
2. Would you like to see our rental furniture?
3. Three rooms of furniture include living room, dining room, and bedroom furniture.
4. We have desks and table lamps. Do you want to buy or rent?
5. That costs . . .
6. We don't have that kind of furniture at hand; please come (back) next month. (c)

The customers discuss it between themselves and with the salesclerk in Chinese, using the following material.

1. Should we rent or buy furniture?
2. Should we buy new or used?
3. What furniture do we need?
4. We need a desk.
5. We need a table lamp.
6. We don't have money this month; we'll come (back) next month to purchase it. (c)

Exercise 2

The Furniture in Your Home

Goal: To practice the terms zūde "rented," mǎide "bought," xīnde "new (ones)," and jiùde "used (ones)" in a conversation.

Procedure: The teacher will assign one interviewer to make a survey of the class about the furniture in their apartments or houses.

1. The furniture in your home: did you buy it or rent it? (a)
Nǐmen jiā de jiājù, shì mǎide háishi zūde?
2. The furniture in your home: is it new or used? (b)
Nǐmen jiā de jiājù, shì xīnde háishi jiùde?

Everyone in the class, regardless of the facts, should give one answer to each question.

1. We bought our furniture. Wǒmende jiājù shì mǎide. (a)
We rented our furniture. Wǒmende jiājù shì zūde.
2. Our furniture is new. Wǒmende jiājù shì xīnde. (b)
Our furniture is used. Wǒmende jiājù shì jiùde.

The teacher will assign several students, one after another, to report the statistics. For example:

1. Of the students in this class, five rent their furniture.
Zhèi bān xuésheng, wǔge zū jiājù. (a)
Of the students in this class, three bought their furniture.
Zhèi bān xuésheng, sānge mǎi jiājù. (a)
2. Of the students in this class, four have new furniture.
Zhèi bān xuésheng, sìge yǒu xīn jiājù. (b)
Of the students in this class, six have used furniture.
Zhèibiān xuésheng, liùge yǒu jiù jiājù. (b)

Exercise 3

What Do You Say?

1. Someone tells you about an apartment. Ask how many rooms there are and if it is furnished. Ask what the rent is per month.
2. You have an apartment. Tell someone, and say you have a lot of books. You need to buy a bookcase. Ask where one can be bought.
3. Tell someone that half the furniture in your apartment is used and half is new. There are four rooms, a living room, a dining room, a kitchen, and a bathroom.
4. You have heard about an apartment for rent. Tell someone you don't know where it is. A friend saw it in the newspaper and told you about it.
5. Someone wants to buy furniture. Tell her there is a furniture store behind the bank. They sell new and used furniture and also rent furniture.
6. Tell someone your apartment is excellent but truly expensive. It is \$350 per month. It has three bedrooms but you need four.
7. A friend tells you about his apartment. Tell him the rent cannot be considered expensive at \$175 per month. Ask if it is furnished.
8. You have just bought something. Ask the store clerk where the cashier is. Tell him you want to give him \$20 now, and \$20 next month. Ask if that is all right.
9. A lamp costs \$25. You have only \$15. Ask the clerk if you can pay \$10 now and \$15 next month. You also want to buy a desk.
10. Your bed is too small. Tell the clerk and ask if they have big ones. Tell him you don't want a used one; you want it new.
11. Tell someone there is a table in your apartment, but it only has four chairs. You have six in your family and you need two more chairs.
12. You have bought several items. Ask the cashier whether you can give (pay) half now and half next month.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

A. Chinese-English: Cover the Pinyin text below. Teacher: Randomly select sentences and read each one twice with a short pause between readings. Student: Say aloud the English equivalent. (translate)

1. Wǒmen bān de Hú Xiǎojie méiyǒu qián, kěshì tā xiǎng mǎi yī-zhāng zhuōzi, yíge shūjiàzi, hé yīzhǎn dēng.
2. Lǐ Dàniánde shānshuǐhuàr hěn yǒumíng. Chénglǐ de, chéngwài de shūdiàn dōu mài tāde huàr. Dàwèide fángjiānli yǒu yīzhāng Lǐ Xiānsheng huàde huàr.
3. Wǒ zhēn xǐhuan Lǐ Dànián huàde shānshuǐhuàr. Nǚjiā shūdiàn mài tāde huàr?
4. Nèige jiājùdiàn shànggēyuè màigei tā yīzhāng zhuōzi, sānbǎ yīzi hé liǎngzhǎn dēng. Yígòng cái bāshí sānkuàibàn, hěn piányi.
5. Tāmen wǒfáng de jiājù shì xīnde; kètīng hé chūfáng de jiājù dōu shì jiùde, kěshì dōu hěn hǎokàn.
6. Wǒ dìdi zhù de gōngyù méiyǒu jiājù, yīnwei zūqián yíge yuè cái yìbǎikuài. Wǒ xiǎng mǎi xiē kètīng de jiājù sònggei tā.
7. Wáng Dànián xiǎng mǎi yítào fàntīng de jiājù sònggei tā. Mǎ Mínglǐ xiǎng sònggei tā wǒfáng de jiājù.
8. Fāng Bǎolánde jiā búzài zhèr. Tāde jiājù dōu shì zūde. Tā méiyǒu qián mǎi xīn jiājù.
9. Qǐngwèn, nǐmen chūzū de jiājù shì xīnde háishi jiùde? Yítào fángjiān de jiājù měiyuè duōshao qián?
10. Qǐngwèn, nǐmen zū de gōngyù yǒu jǐge xīzǎofáng? Nǐ měitiān xī jǐcì zǎo?
11. Yǒu jiājù de gōngyù měiyuè jiǔshiwǔkuài. Méiyǒu jiājù de gōngyù měiyuè qīshikuài.
12. Xiàgēyuè wǒmen yào qù Zhōngguóchéng mǎi shū, chī Zhōngguó fàn, hē Zhōngguó píjiǔ.
13. Qù Zhōngguóchéng mǎi shū, nǐ búhuì shuō Zhōngguó huà búyào jīn, nǐ děi yǒu qián.
14. Xīn yīzi mài liùshikuài, jiù yīzi mài wǔkuài. Nǐ mǎi xīnde háishi mǎi jiùde?
15. Zhèiwèi xiānsheng búyào Fàguó jiǔ. Tā yào Zhōngguó píjiǔ. Tā shuō Zhōngguó píjiǔ hěn yǒumíng.

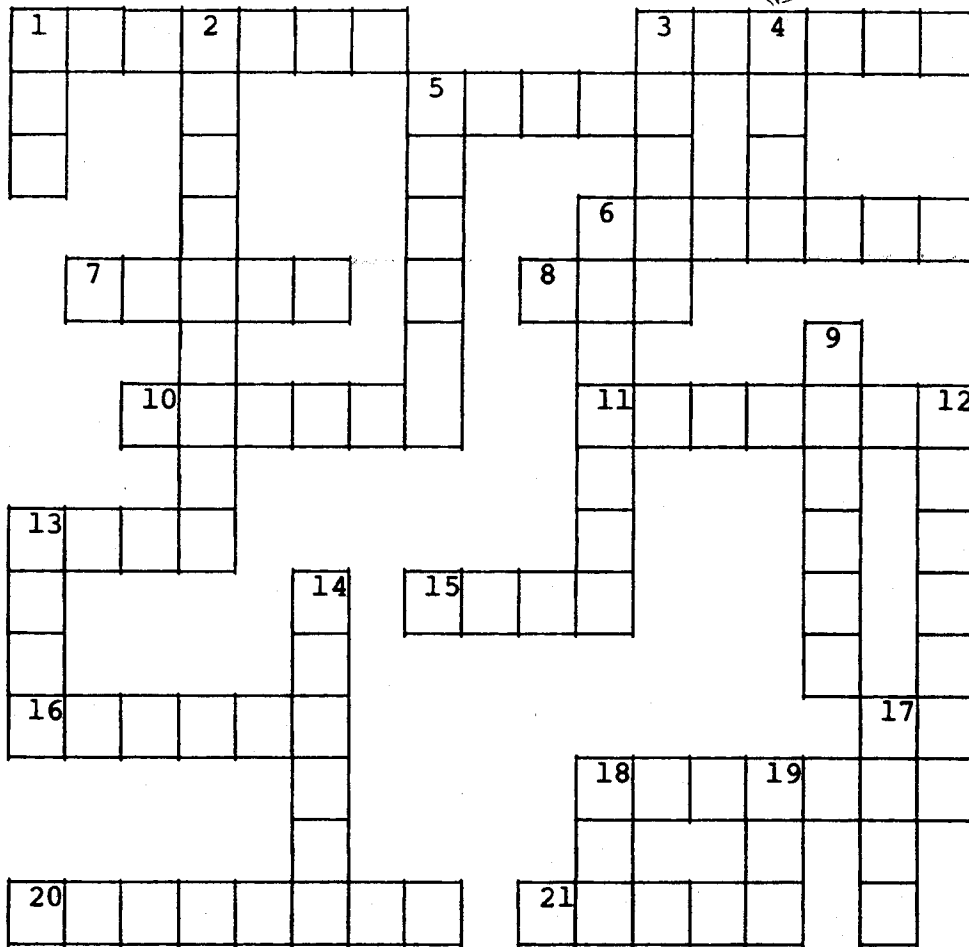
B. Chinese-English: Fluency Exercise. Student: Read aloud the sentences in Pinyin below concentrating on fluency, pronunciation and tones. Then give your instructor the English equivalent for each sentence.

1. Wáng Dàniánde àiren xiàgeyuè yào lái. Tā zū de gōngyù méiyou jiājù, tā xiǎng zū xīnde.
2. Wáng Dànián méiyou qián mǎi xīn jiājù. Tā xiǎng mǎi jiù jiājù.
3. Chuáng hěn yào jīn, Wáng Dànián xiǎng mǎi xīnde, búyào jiùde.
4. Wáng Dànián hé Mǎ Mínglǐ xiǎng yīkuàir qù yīge hěn dàde jiājùdiàn.
5. Nèige dà jiājùdiàn mài xīn jiājù, yě mài jiù jiājù. Xīn chuáng, jiù chuáng dōu yǒu.
6. Nèige jiājùdiàn de xīn jiājù hěn guǐ. Jiù jiājù hěn piányi, kěshì bùhǎo.
7. Nèige jiājùdiàn yě chūzū jiājù. Sānge fángjiān de jiājù, měiyuè cái wúshiwùkuài qián. Hěn piányi.
8. Sānge fángjiān de jiājù, yǒu wòfángde, kètīngde, hé fàntīngde.
9. Chūzū de jiājù dōu shì xīnde, méiyou jiùde; kěshì méiyou shūzhuō hé shūjiàzi.
10. Wáng Dàniánde àiren hěn xǐhuan kànshū. Tā yǒu hěn duō shū, xūyào liǎngge shūjiàzi.
11. Lǐ Xiǎoyuè zài yīge jiājùdiàn gōngzuò. Tā zài nèige jiājùdiàn shōuqián.
12. Nèige jiājùdiàn, yóujú gēn yínháng dōu zài yīkuàir. Xuéxiào zài nèige jiājùdiàn hòutou.
13. Nèige jiājùdiàn sònggei wǒ yìzhǐ bǐ, shì yuánzhūbǐ. Bǐ shàngtōu yǒu nèige jiājùdiàn de dìzhǐ.
14. Nèige jiājùdiàn mài chuáng, yīzi, gen zhuōzi. Dōu hěn piányi.
15. Hú Měilíng xiǎng mǎi liǎngběn Hàn-Yīng Zìdiǎn, sānběn Yīng-Hàn Zìdiǎn.
16. Lǐ Xiǎoyuè xiǎng mǎi sānběn Yīngwén de shípǔ sònggei tāde Měiguó péngyou.

C. English-Chinese: Teacher: Randomly assign sentences to each Student. Student: First read the sentence carefully, then translate into Chinese. Concentrate on word-order, fluency, tones and pronunciation.

1. Wáng Dànián works in a furniture store. They sell tables, desks, chairs, beds and bookshelves. They also rent furniture.
2. Hú Měilíng works over there too. She is a cashier. Formerly she worked in the post office.
3. I don't have money to buy new furniture. I should buy used furniture.
4. I want a bed. It is very important. I should buy a new one.
5. To rent three rooms of furniture for fifty-five dollars per month cannot be considered expensive.
6. The three rooms of furniture include furniture for the living room, the dining room and a bedroom.
7. It does not include (does not have) bookshelves, chairs, a desk or a lamp.
8. I work in a bank. I am not a student. I don't need a bookshelf. You need it. I will give it (as a gift) to you.
9. Don't give it to me. Sell it to me. I want to pay you twenty-one dollars.
10. Next month my younger brother will come (here). His wife will come (here) too.
11. This time we have eight persons. We will eat Chinese food, eight courses and one soup.
12. Each person should pay five dollars and seventy-five cents. Everyone will give the money to our class monitor.
13. The apartment that they rent here is really nice looking.
14. His wife likes to cook very much. He wants to give her a Chinese cookbook as a gift.
15. The cashier at the furniture store likes to cook too. She cannot read Chinese. Mǎ Mínglǐ gave her an English cook book.

ENRICHMENT



ACROSS

1. wonderful
3. what your favorite drink might come in
5. but
6. English
7. You can't buy, so you _____.
8. possess
10. How much _____?
11. can't be used
13. suffix for store
15. yīzhǎn _____.
16. a place where one can rent a room
17. number
18. A student sits at a _____.
20. rent a _____
21. He _____ a book.

DOWN

1. know how to
2. where you got your sofa
3. a popular drink
4. capable of
5. The TV is in the _____.
6. This beer is very _____.
9. where one sleeps
12. work
13. yí _____ gōngyú
14. needed in a dining room
17. jǐcǐ?
18. I like to read _____.
19. to make

LESSON 11

INTRODUCTION



This lesson deals with:

- Particle of presumption ba.
- Some time words formed with -tiān, "day," -nián, "year," and wǔ, "noon."
- Ordinalizing particle dì.
- Two actions in sequence with xiān...zài, "first...then."
- Starting point and destination. Co-verbs of motion and direction cóng, "from," and dào, "to."
- Purpose of coming or going.
- Co-verb of conveyance zuò, "by means of."



Hěn duō Zhōngguó Chuán

OBJECTIVES



Upon completion of this lesson you will be able to:

- a. State your intention to do something.
- b. Ask and answer questions or exchange information about traveling.
- c. Ask and tell when an event will take place.
- d. Link a conversational statement using nàme, "in that case."

GLOSSARY



1. ba 吧 P: (indicating 'I presume')
 Nín shì Mǎ Tóngzhì ba. (You are Comrade Mǎ, I presume.)
2. chuán 船 N: boat, ship (M: sōu 艘, tiáo 条)
3. cóng 从 CV: from
- a. cóng...lái 从...来 PT: come from ...
 Tā cóng Rìběn lái. (He comes from Japan.)
- b. cóng...qù 从...去 PT: go to ... from ...
 Tā gēge cóng Déguó qù. (His older brother is going from Germany.)
4. dào 到 CV/V: to/arrive
- Tā dào xuéxiào qù.
 Tā àiren xiàgèyuè dào. (He is going to school.)
 (His spouse will arrive [here] next month.)
- a. dào...lái 到...来 PT: come to ...
 Tā mǔqin yào dào Měiguó lái. (His mother wants to come/will come to the States.)
- b. dào...qù 到...去 PT: go to...
 Wǒ dìdi yào dào Fàguó qù. (My younger brother wants to go to France.)
- c. cóng...dào 从...到 PT: from ... to
 Cóng yíyuè dào wǔyuè yǒu yībǎi wǔshíyī tiān. (There are 151 days from January to May.)
- d. cóng...dào...lái 从...到...来 PT: come to ... from
 Tā yào cóng Měiguó dào Zhōngguó lái. (He wants to come to China from the States.)
- e. cóng...dào...qù 从...到...去 PT: go to ...from
 Lǐ Tóngzhì yào cóng Fàguó dào Déguó qù. (Comrade Lǐ will go from France to Germany.)
5. dì 第 P: (ordinalizing prefix to numbers.)

- a. dìyītiān 第一天 TW: the first day
- b. dìèrtiān 第二天 TW: the second day, the next day
- c. dìsānběn 第三本 N: the third volume
6. duìle 对了 IE: That's right. That's correct
7. fēijī 飞机 N: airplane (M: jià 架)
8. huǒchē 火车 N: train
9. jìhuà 计划 N/V: a plan/to plan
 Tā yǒu sānge jìhuà, dōu (He has three plans; all
 hěn hǎo. are good.)
 Wǒ jìhuà mǎi yíjià xiǎo (I plan to buy a small
 fēijī. plane.)
10. jìxù 继续 AV: continue to
 Wǒ jìxù hējiǔ, búniànshū. (I will continue to drink,
 not to study.)
11. jīng(guò) 经(过) CV/V: by way of, go through, via
 Tā qù Zhōngguó bùjīng(guò) (He is going to China, but
 Rìběn. not via Japan.)
 Wǒ dào chénglǐtōu qù, kényi (Going downtown, I can go
 jīngguò nàjiā shāngdiàn. through by way of that store.)
12. líkāi 离开 V: leave
 Nǐ nǎitiān líkāi zhèr? (When are you going to leave
 here?)
 Yǐjǐūbāyī nián, wǒ dìyíci (The first time I left home
 líkāi jiā. was 1981.)
13. míngnián 明年 TW: next year
- a. jīnnián 今年 TW: this year
- b. qùnián 去年 TW: last year
14. míngtiān 明天 TW: tomorrow
- a. jīntiān 今天 TW: today
- b. zuótiān 昨天 TW: yesterday
15. nàme 那么 IE/A: thus, then, in such a way/
 in such way, in that way

16. qìchē 汽车 N: automobile (M: bù 部 ,
liàng 辆)
- a. chē 车 N: car (used with wheeled vehicle)
- b. kāi qìchē 开汽车 VO: to drive a car
Wǒ huì kāi qìchē. (I can drive a car.)
17. qǐng zuò 请坐 IE: Please sit down
18. sān-sìyuè 三四月 TW: March or April
19. shàngwǔ 上午 TW: fore-noon
- a. zhōngwǔ 中午 TW: noon
- b. xiàwǔ 下午 TW: afternoon
20. shíhou 时候 N: time
21. tán 谈 V: to chat, to converse, to talk
Nǐmen tán shénme? (What do you talk about?)
Wǒmen tán zhōngguó huà. (We talk about Chinese painting.)
Wǒmen lái tán. (Let's have a talk)
22. xiān 先 A: first (to do something)
23. Xiānggǎng 香港 PW: Hong Kong
24. zài 再 A: again (in the future), then (to do something)
Jīntiān wǒ qù, míngtiān wǒ yào zài qù.
(Today I go, tomorrow I will go again.)
- a. xiān ... zài ... 先...再... PT: first ... then ...
Wǒmen xiān hētāng, zài chīfàn.
(We'll have soup first, then eat.)
- b. zàijiàn 再见 IE: Good-by
25. zǒu 走 V: to travel, to walk, to go
Tā míngtiān zǒu. (He leaves tomorrow.)
Dào Zhōngguó qù, zěnmē zǒu? (How are you going to China?)
Wàitōu hěn hǎo, wǒmen zài wàitōu zǒuzou ba.
(Outside it's very nice, let's take a walk outside.)
Cóng zhèr dào Rìběn, yào zǒu sāntiān. (From here to Japan, will take three days.)

COMMUNICATIVE EXCHANGES



Jìhuà Qù Zhōngguó - Planning a Trip to China

Frame 1

Bái (B) visits Huáng (H) and they discuss routes for their upcoming trips to Běijīng. This will be the first trip for Huáng and the second trip for Bái.

- | | | |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | H: <u>Qǐng zuò</u> . Nǐ shénme <u>shí-hou</u> <u>zài</u> qù Zhōngguó? | Please sit (down). When are you going to China again? |
| | B: <u>Míngnián sān-sìyuè</u> . Nǐ fùmǔ hái <u>zài</u> Zhōngguó <u>ba</u> . | March or April of next year. I suppose your parents are still in China. |
| 2 | H: Shìde. Wǒ fùqin yào wǒ <u>dào</u> Běijīng (qù) <u>jìxù</u> xué Zhōngwén qù. | Yes. My father wants me to go to Běijīng and continue to learn Chinese. |

Notes:

1H Qǐng zuò, "Please sit down," is an idiomatic expression used to welcome a guest and to make him comfortable.

Zài, "again," is an adverb used to indicate repetition of an action (again) or to indicate that the action of the verb will take place in the future (then). Example:

Xiàgeyuè wǒ zài gěi tā wǔbǎikuài qián. I'll give her \$500.00 again next month.

1B Míngnián, "next year," is a time word indicating time when.

Sān-sìyuè, "March or April." One way of indicating an approximation is by uniting two consecutive numbers with the appropriate measure. Other examples of number and measure combinations forming approximate numbers are liǎng-sāntiān, "two or three days," and shíwǔ-liùcì, "15 or 16 times."

Ba, "I presume." The particle ba can be used to indicate a tentative statement or a mild question. For example:

Nǐ hái shì xuésheng ba. I suppose you're still a student.

Nín hǎo ba. You are well, I presume.

2H Dào...qù/lái construction. As a CV, dào, "to," indicates motion and direction. Examples:

Tā dào Fàguó qù. He goes to France.
Tā dào Měiguó lái. He comes to the States.

Dào Běijīng (qù) jìxù xué Zhōngwén qù. When the CV of motion and direction dào ... qù/lái phrase is conjoined with a purpose of coming or going phrase, the ... qù/lái immediately following the PW/N is optional.

Dào Běijīng (qù) jìxù xué Zhōngwén qù. Go to Beijing for the purpose of continuing to study Chinese.
Dào Měiguó (lái) mǎi dōngxì lái. Come to the States for the purpose of buying things.

Frame 2

- | | | |
|---|---|--|
| 2 | B: <u>Nàme</u> nǐ <u>jìhuà</u> dào Běijīng qù ma? | In that case do you plan to go to Beijing? |
| 3 | H: Wǒ gēn wǒ àiren dōu yǒu zhège jìhuà. Nǐ zhèicì dào Zhōngguó qù, zěnmē <u>zǒu</u> ? | Both my wife and I plan to do this. How are you going to go to China this time? |
| | B: Wǒ <u>xiān</u> dào Fàguó qù kànkān, <u>zài</u> <u>zuò fēijī</u> dào Běijīng qù. Nǐmen zěnmē <u>zǒu</u> ? | First, I'm going to France for a visit; then, I'll go to Beijing by airplane. How are you going to go? |

Notes:

2B Nàme, "In that case" is a very common transitional phrase that relates one statement to another. Example:

Nǐ méiyǒu zhèiběn shū. You don't have this book? In
Nàme wǒ gěi nǐ. that case I'll give it to
you.

3B Xiān...zài Construction. In the sentence, xiān dào Fàguó qù, zài dào Běijīng qù, "First go to France, then go to Beijing." the two adverbs xiān, "first," and zài, "then," show the sequence. Examples:

Wǒmen xiān hē tāng, zài chī fàn. We'll have soup first, then eat.
Tāmen xiān xiě zì, zài kàn bào. They write characters first, then read newspapers.

Zuò, "to ride on" CV of conveyance. In this lesson there are three kinds of conveyance. Examples:

Tā zuò fēijī dào Měiguó lái.	He comes to the States by airplane.
Tā zuò chuán dào Měiguó lái.	He comes to the States by ship.
Tā zuò huǒchē dào Jiā-nà dà qù.	He goes to Canada by train.

Frame 3

- | | |
|--|---|
| 4 H: Wǒmen xiān qù <u>Xiānggǎng</u> zài <u>jīng</u> Shànghǎi dào Běijīng qù. | First we'll go to Hong Kong, then go by way of Shanghai to Beijing. |
| B: Nǐmen <u>zěnmē</u> yào xiān qù Xiānggǎng? | How come you are going to go to Hong Kong first? |
| 5 H: Yīnwei wǒ fù-mǔ xiànzài dōu zài Xiānggǎng. <u>Cóng</u> Xiānggǎng yǒu <u>chuán</u> dào Shànghǎi qù ma? | Because my parents are both in Hong Kong now. Is there a boat from Hong Kong to Shanghai? |

Notes:

4H Jīng Shànghǎi, "by way of Shanghai." Jīng is short for jīng-guó, "by way of, via," or "through." It can be used as a verb or a CV. Examples:

Tā bùjīng(guó) Rìběn.	He doesn't go by way of Japan.
Tā jīng Rìběn dào Zhōng-guó qù.	He went to China by way of Japan.

4B Zěnmē, "why, how come." This is another meaning for the previously used interrogative zěnmē "how."

Nǐ zěnmē bú qù?	Why aren't you going?
-----------------	-----------------------

5H Cóng...qù/lái construction. The CV cóng, "from," indicates motion and direction. The patterns are:

cóng...qù	go to (there) ... from ...
cóng...lái	come to (here) ... from ...
Tāmen cóng Rìběn qù.	They go to (there) from Japan.
Tāmen cóng Yīngguó lái.	They come (here) from England.

Note: Unless an actual destination is given, the verb qù, "go," assumes "to go (there)" while the verb lái, "come," assumes "to come (here)."

Cóng...dào...qù/lái construction. In the sentence cóng Xiānggǎng dào Běijīng, "go from Hong Kong to Beijing," the "cóng...dào, from...to," indicates specific motion and direction.

More patterns of motion and direction:

Zhāng Xiānsheng cóng
Rìběn dào Fàguó qù.
Zhāng Tàitai cóng Rì-
běn dào Měiguó lái.

Mr. Zhang goes to France from
Japan.
Mrs. Zhang comes to the States
from Japan.

Frame 4

5 B: Yǒu. O! Duìle. Nǐmen kéyǐ
xiān zuò chuán dào Shànghǎi
qù kànkàn, zài zuò huǒchē dào
Běijīng qù.

There is. Ah! That's right.
You can first go to Shanghai
by boat for a visit; then go
to Beijing by train.

6 H: Nàme zǒu, cóng Xiānggǎng
dào Shànghǎi qù xūyào jǐtiān?

How many days will it require
to go from Hong Kong to Shang-
hai that way?

B: Xūyào liǎngtiān. Dìyītiān
xiàwǔ líkāi Xiānggǎng, dìsān-
tiān shàngwǔ dào Shànghǎi.

(It will) take two days.
You'll leave Hong Kong in the
afternoon of the first day and
arrive in Shanghai before noon
of the third day.

Notes:

5B Duìle, "That's right." This is a proper way to give a positive answer in this context.

6H Nàme..., "...that way." Nàme is an adverb used to modify a verb. For example: Nàme zǒu, "go that way," nàme dà, "that big."

6B Dì... ordinalizing prefix. The particle dì, "the," is the ordinalizing prefix to numbers. Examples:

dì jiǔtiān	the ninth day
dì wūnián	the fifth year
dì bāge	the eighth one
dì sānběn	the third volume

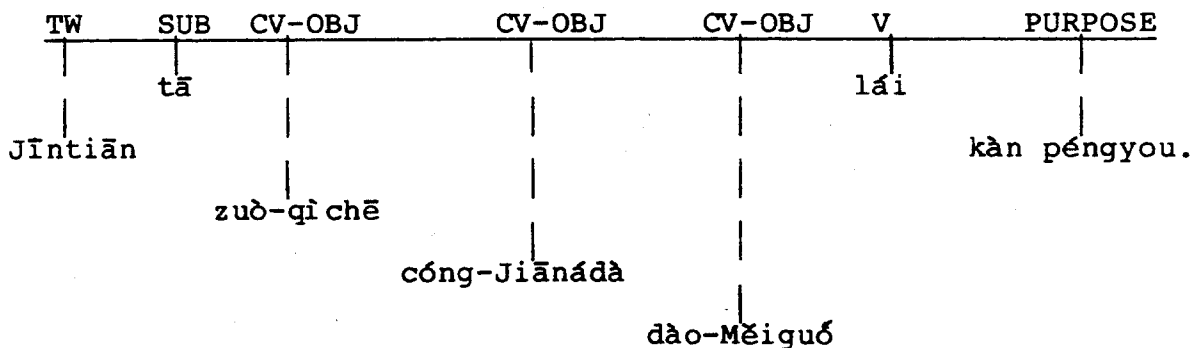
Frame 5

7	H: Wǒmen míngtiān zhōngwǔ dào Dōnghǎilóu qǔ chǎnfàn, zài tántan, hǎo buhǎo?	How about tomorrow noon we eat at Donghailou and talk it over again?
	B: Hǎo. <u>Zàijiàn.</u>	Fine. Good-by

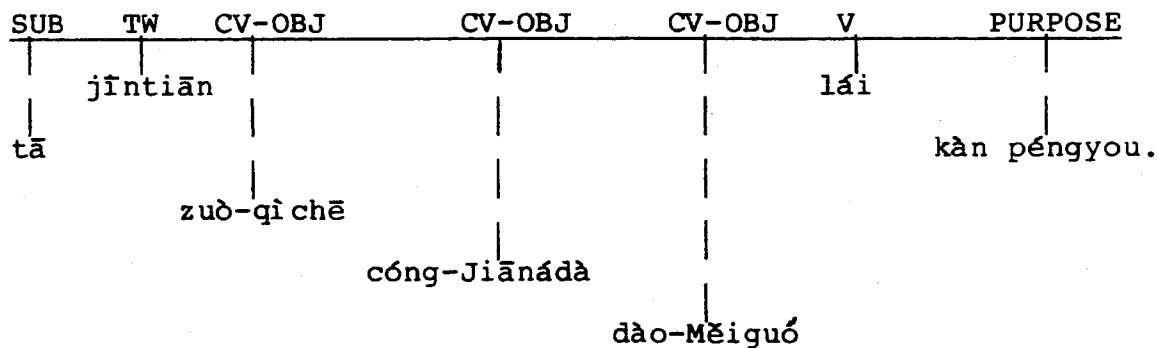
Notes:

7H Time when construction. In the above sentence, míngtiān zhōngwǔ, "tomorrow noon," is a TW combination. A TW may be used as a movable adverb in the sentences below.

a. Jīntiān tā zuò qìchē cóng Jiānádà dào Měiguó lái kàn péngyou.



b. Tā jīntiān zuò qìchē cóng Jiānádà dào Měiguó lái kàn péngyou.



7B Zàijiàn, "good-by," is a very common conclusion of a conversation.

对话

Frame 1

- | | | |
|---|--------------------------|---|
| 1 | H: 请坐。你什么时候再去中国。 | Please sit (down). When are you going to China again? |
| | B: 明年三四月。你父母还在中国吧。 | March or April of next year. I suppose your parents are still in China. |
| 2 | H: 是的。我父亲要我到北京(去)继续学中文去。 | Yes. My father wants me to go to Beijing and continue to learn Chinese. |

Frame 2

- | | | |
|---|------------------------------|--|
| 2 | B: 那么你计划到北京去吗? | In that case do you plan to go to Beijing? |
| 3 | H: 我跟我爱人都有这个计划。你这次到中国去, 怎么走? | Both my wife and I plan to do this. How are you going to go to China this time? |
| | B: 我先到法国去看看, 再坐飞机到北京去。你们怎么走? | First, I'm going to France for a visit; then, I'll go to Beijing by airplane. How are you going to go? |

Frame 3

- | | | |
|---|----------------------------|---|
| 4 | H: 我们先去香港再经上海到北京去。 | First we'll go to Hong Kong, then go by way of Shanghai to Beijing. |
| | B: 你们怎么要先去香港? | How come you are going to go to Hong Kong first? |
| 5 | H: 因为我父母现在都在香港。从香港有船到上海去吗? | Because my parents are both in Hong Kong now. Is there a boat from Hong Kong to Shanghai? |

Frame 4

5 B: 有。哦！对了。你们可以
先坐船到上海去看看，再
坐火车到北京去。

There is. Ah! That's right.
You can first go to Shanghai
by boat for a visit; then go
to Beijing by train.

6 H: 那么走，从香港到上海去
需要几天？

How many days will it require
to go from Hong Kong to Shang-
hai that way?

B: 需要两天。第一天下午离
开港，第三天上午到上
海。

(It will) take two days.
You'll leave Hong Kong in the
afternoon of the first day and
arrive in Shanghai before noon
of the third day.

Frame 5

7 H: 我们明天中午到东海楼去
吃饭，再谈谈，好不好？

How about tomorrow noon we eat
at Donghailou and talk it over
again?

B: 好。再见。

Fine. Good-by

SUMMARY



Frame 1

a. Zài "again" is an adverb used to indicate repetition of an action (again) or to indicate that the action of the verb will take place in the future (then). Examples:

(again) Nǐ míngtiān kěyǐ zài lái Can you come once again tomorrow?
yíci ma? row?
(then) Wǒ xiān chīfàn, zài hējiǔ. I eat first; then I drink.

b. One way of indicating approximate numbers is to use consecutive numbers before a measure, such as liǎng-sānèr hǎizi "two or three children," sān-sìwèi péngyou "three or four friends."

c. The particle ba "I presume" can be used to indicate a tentative statement or a mild question as in:

Nǐ zài Měiguó Yínháng You work in the Bank of America, I presume.
gōngzuò ba. ca, I presume.

d. The dào "to"...qù/lái construction is used to indicate motion and direction. As in:

Nǐ dào nǎr qù? Where are you going?
Wǒ yào dào nǐ zhèr lái. I want to come to where you are/to your place.

This can be expanded by adding a purpose for coming or going.

Wǒ yào dào nǐ zhèr lái (lái) I want to come to where you are to study English.
xué Yīngwén lái. are to study English.

Frame 2

By using the xiān...zài construction, you can show the sequencing of two events.

Wǒmen xiān hējiǔ, zài We drink first, then eat.
chīfàn. chīfàn.

Frame 3

a. The verb or CV jīng, means "by way of, via," or "through" as in:

Tā jīng Shànghǎi dào He is going to Beijing through
Běijīng qù. Shanghai

b. The cóng (from)...qù/lái construction indicates motion and direction as in:

Tāmen cóng Měiguó qù. They go/are going (there) from
the United States.
Wǒ cóng Déguó lái. I have come (here) from Germany.

This can be expanded to include dào.

Nǐ cóng Xiānggǎng dào
Shànghǎi qù ma?

Are you going from Hong Kong
to Shanghai?

Frame 4

a. Zuò "to ride on" is a CV of conveyance; it indicates what one is riding on. Example:

Nǐ zuò chuán dào Zhōngguó
lái ma?

Are you coming to China by
boat?

b. The particle dì is the ordinalizing prefix to numbers.
Example:

dìsāntiān
dìwūtiān

the third day
the fifth day

DRILLS I



A. Substitution Drill: Use the teacher's cues to make substitutions as indicated.

(T) Zhāng Xiānsheng cóng Zhōngguó lái. (Mr. Zhāng comes from China.) cue: Fàguó	(S) Zhāng Xiānsheng cóng Fàguó lái. (Mr. Zhāng comes from France.)
---	---

B. Transformation Drill: Convert the teacher's pattern cóng... lái, "come from," to the pattern dào... qù, "go to."

(T) Lǐ Xiǎojié cóng Zhōngguó lái. (Miss Li comes from China.)	(S) Lǐ Xiǎojié dào Zhōngguó qù. (Miss Li goes to China.)
--	---

C. Expansion Drill: Expand the teacher's statements with additional Co-Verb clause "dào PW."

(T) Tā gēge cóng Dézhōu lái. cue: California (His older brother comes from Texas.)	(S) Tā gēge cóng Dézhōu dào Jiāzhōu lái. (His older brother comes from Texas to California.)
--	---

D. Expansion Drill: Expand the teacher's statements with the information about transportation zuò..., "by..."

(T) Tā cóng Rìběn dào Xiānggǎng qù. cue: <u>by airplane</u> (He goes to Hong Kong from Japan.)	(S) Tā zuò fēiji cóng Rìběn dào Xiānggǎng qù. (He goes to Hong Kong from Japan by airplane.)
---	---

E. Expansion Drill: Expand the teacher's statements with the time words as cued by the teacher.

(T) Tā gēge zuò fēijī cóng
Rìběn dào Xiānggǎng qù.

(His older brother goes
to Hong Kong from Japan by
plane.)

cue: tomorrow afternoon

(S) Míngtiān xiàwǔ tā gēge zuò
fēijī cóng Rìběn dào Xiānggǎng
qù. OR Tā gēge míngtiān xiàwǔ
zuò fēijī cóng Rìběn dào
Xiānggǎng qù.

(His older brother goes
to Hong Kong from Japan by
airplane tomorrow afternoon.)

F. Transformation Drill: When the teacher proposes a pair of actions arrange the two actions one after the other as you like. Then, another student will arrange them another way. Both of you must use xian...zài, "first...then."

(T) hējiǔ, chīfàn
(drink, eat food)

(SA) Wǒ xǐhuan xiān hējiǔ, zài
chīfàn.

(I like to drink first,
then eat.)

(SB) Wǒ xǐhuan xiān chīfàn,
zài hējiǔ.

(I like to eat first,
then drink.)

G. Transformation Drill: Change the teacher's questions into a statement with the particle ba, "I presume."

(T) Nín shì cóng Niǔyuē lái de
ma?

(Did you come from New
York?)

(S) Nín shì cóng Niǔyuē lái de
ba.

(I suppose you came from
New York.)

DRILLS II



A. Tell someone you're sorry, you are not in this kind of profession, you are in another.

EX: Duìbuqǐ, wǒ búshì mǎibàode, wǒ shì mǎibàode.

Duìbuqǐ SUB búshì N SUB shì N

Duìbuqǐ, wǒ búshì	màiqìchēde, màihuàrde, mǎijiājùde, shōuqiǎnde, kāihuǒchēde, wǒ shì kāifēijīde, kāichuánde, màidōngxīde, mǎijiūde,	mǎiqìchēde. huàhuàrde. mǎijiājùde. zuòfànde. zuòhuǒchēde. zuòfēijīde. zuòchuánde. màidōngxīde. mǎijiājùde.
-------------------	---	--

B. Say that you can't do something; then ask if your friend can do it.

EX: Wǒ xiànzài hái búhuì kāi qìchē, nǐ huì búhuì kāi qìchē?

SUB A hái búhuì V O,

Wǒ xiànzài hái búhuì	zuò Zhōngguó fàn, xiě Zhōngguó zì, kàn Zhōngguó bào, yòng kuàizi, kāi fēijī, xiě fántǐzì, xiě jiǎntǐzì, shuō Zhōngguó huà,
----------------------	---

SUB huì búhuì V O.

nǐ huì búhuì	zuò Zhōngguó fàn? xiě Zhōngguó zì? kàn Zhōngguó bào? yòng kuàizi? kāi fēijī? xiě fántǐzì? xiě jiǎntǐzì? shuō Zhōngguó huà?
--------------	---

C. Tell someone that every time you (or somebody else) come(s)/go(es) somewhere, you (he/she) always go(es) to see a certain person.

EX: Měicì wǒ dào Běijīng qù, wǒ dōu yào qù kànkàn tā.

SP-M N dào N lái /qù,

	tā		
	Wǔ Xiānsheng		
Měicì	Lǐ Tàitai	dào	Jiùjīnshān lái,
	Mǎ Tóngzhì		qù
	Hú Nùshì		

PN dōu yào lái/qù V PN/N

			wǒ.
			Lǐ Xiānsheng.
tā	dōu yào lái	kànkàn	Mǎ Tàitai.
	qù		Gāo Tóngzhì.
			tā jiějie.

D. Tell someone that the things a third person rents, sells, etc., are of this kind or that kind, then ask which kind he wants.

EX: Tāmen mài de jiājù yǒu xīnde, yě yǒu jiùde. Nǐ yào nǎzhǒng?

SUB V-de N yǒu N

	mài	shū	jiǎntīzide,
	yòng	zìdiǎn	Hàn-Yīngde,
	zuò	shūzhuō	dàde,
Tāmen	mài	de	píxié yǒu guǐde,
	zū	gōngyù	yíge wòfángde,
	mài	shípǔ	Zhōngwénde,

yě yǒu N SUB V QW

	fántīzide.	
	Yīng-Hànde.	
	xiǎode.	Nǐ yào nǎzhǒng?
yě yǒu	piányide.	
	liǎngge wòfángde.	
	Yīngwénde.	

E. In the following sentences, insert an appropriate Pinyin word in the blank spaces.

1. Wǒ hái xūyào yíge dēng, xiànzài wǒ yào qù mǎi _____.
2. Wǒ búhuì kāi qìchē. Nǐ huì _____ qìchē ma?
3. Shǒuqián de zài nǎr? Tā zài _____ ne.
4. Tā mài bàozhǐ, yīnwei tā shì yíge _____ de.
5. Tā yǒu Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn, yě yǒu Yīng-Hàn zìdiǎn. Yīnwei ta xiànzài xué _____ wén.
6. Wǒ zū de gōngyù shì liǎngjiān wòfángde, yíge yuè de _____ shì liǎngbǎikuàiqián.
7. Zhèijiā jiājùdiàn de jiājù kéyì mǎi, yě kéyì zū. Nǐ yào _____ háishi yào _____.
8. Zhèijiā fànguǎnr de rén tài duō, wǒmen dào nèijiā _____ qù ba.
9. Guì dōngxì wǒ bùmǎi, wǒ mǎi de dōngxì dou shì _____.
10. Wǒ yǒu yí bù Rìběn qìchē, wǒ měitiān kài _____ qù gōngzuǒ.
11. Wǒ xiàgeyuè qù Běijīng kàn wǒ fù-mǔ, tāmen xiànzài hái zhùzài _____.
12. Sānge fángjiān de jiājù, yíge yuè de zūqián cái bāshikuài, zhēn _____.
13. Tāde shū búzài shūzhuō shàngtōu, _____ shūzhuō tài xiǎo.

F. Tell someone that you suppose it will take so many days to go from one place to another by different types of transportation.

EX: Cóng Xiānggǎng dào Guǎngzhōu, zuò chuán qù děi sāntiān ba.

Cóng PW dào PW zuò N qù AV TW ba

Shànghǎi Měiguó	Běijīng Zhōngguó	huǒchē fēijī	liùtiān liǎngtiān
Cóng Jiāzhōu	dào Niūyūēzhōu,	zuò qìchē	qù děi wǔtiān ba. xūyào
Déguó Měiguó	Fàguó, Rìběn,	huǒchē chuán	hěn duō tiān yí ge yuè
Jiùjīnshān	Niūyue	fēijī	yìtiān

G. Say that you like to drive this kind of car [but] don't like to drive that kind of car. Then ask what kind of car your friend likes to drive.

EX: Wǒ xǐhuan kāi dà qìchē, bù xǐhuan kāi xiǎo qìchē. Nǐ xǐhuan kāi něizhǒng qìchē?

SUB ADV V ADJ N ADV V

Wǒ xǐhuan kāi guī	jīnnián de xīn	qìchē,	bù xǐhuan kāi
	Yījiǔ bāilíng nián de		
	xiǎo		
	Rìběn		
	zìjǐde		

ADJ N SUB ADV V SP-N N?

Èguó	něiguó de		
jiù	něizhǒng		
piányi	qìchē.	Nǐ xǐhuan kai	qìche?
Yījiǔ liùlíng nián de			
dà			
Měiguó			
péngyǒu de			

H. Say that you are going somewhere at a certain time, and ask if your friend is going. Also ask when he is going there.

EX: Wǒ xiàgeyuè shíhào dào Jiānádà qù. Nǐ ne? Nǐ shénme shíhòu dào Jiānádà qù?

SUB Time Phrase dào PW qù. Nǐ ne?

jīntiān xiàwǔ	Niǔyuē
míngnián Sìyuè	Táiwān
míngtiān shàngwǔ	Běijīng
Wǒ zhèigeyuè sānhào dào	Shànghǎi qù. Nǐ ne?
jīntiān zhōngwǔ	Guǎngzhōu
míngtiān xiàwǔ	Xiānggǎng
zhèigeyuè Shíwǔhào	Àndàluè
jīnnián Báyue	Rìběn

SUB QW shíhòu dào FW qù?

Niǔyuē	
Táiwān	
Běijīng	
Nǐ shénme shíhòu dào	Shànghǎi qù?
Guǎngzhōu	
Xiānggǎng	
Àndàluè	
Rìběn	

I. Say that when you go someplace this time, you want to go by a certain type of transportation, that you don't want to go by another kind of transportation, which causes too much trouble.

EX: Zhèicì qù Běijīng, wǒ xiǎng zuò fēijī, bùxiǎng zuò chuán. Zuò chuán tài máfan.

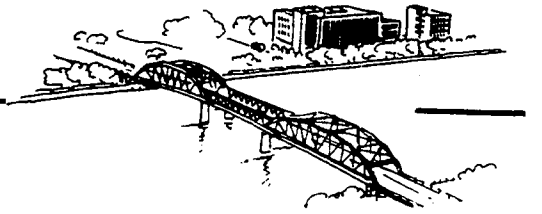
PH qù PW SUB xiǎng VO

Niǔyuē,	huǒchē,
Xiānggǎng,	fēijī,
Zhèicì qù Jiùjīnshān, wǒ xiǎng zuò	qìchē,
Niǔyuē,	qìchē,
Yíngguó,	fēijī,

bùxiǎng V N V N A SV

	qì chē. chuán.	qì chē chuán	
bùxiǎng zuò huǒchē. chuán. chuán.	Zuò huǒchē tài máfán.		

DICTIONATION EXERCISES



With books closed, write down in PINYIN the following sentences dictated by your teacher. Pay special attention to spelling and tones.

1. Duìle, nǐ shuō nǐ yào jīnnián wǔyuè dào Xiānggǎng qù, nème, nǐ mèimei shénme shíhou qù? 对了, 你说你要今年五月到香港去, 那么你妹妹什么时候去?
2. Měinián zhèige shíhou dōu yǒu hěn duō rén cóng Niūyuē jīngguo zhèr dào Dézhōu qù. 每年这个时候都有很多人从纽约经过这儿到德州去。
3. Wǒ yǒu jǐge péngyou hěn huì kāi chuán; tāmen yě hěn xǐhuan kāi fēijī. 我有几个朋友很会开船; 他们也很喜欢开飞机。
4. Měinián yī-èryuè cóng Xiānggǎng zuò huǒchē dào Guǎngzhōu qù de zhōngguó rén zhēn duō; hěn duō rén dōu shì qù kàn zìjǐ jiāli de rén. 每年一、二月从香港坐火车到广州去的中国人真多; 很多人都是去看自己家里的人。
5. Cóng Dézhōu kāichē dào Jiānádà qù yào sìtiān; dìyītiān shàngwǔ líkāi Dézhōu, dìèrtiān xiàwǔ jiù kéyǐ dào Jiāzhōu. 从德州开车到加拿大去要四天; 第一天上午离开德州, 第二天下午就可以到加州。
6. Wǒmen míngtiān xiān qù kàn Dèng Lǎoshī, zài qù shūdiàn kàn shū, hǎo ma? 我们明天先去看邓老师, 再去书店看书, 好吗?
7. Zěnmé zhè jǐtiān wǒmen zhèr dōu méiyǒu bàozhǐ? Nǐmen nèr yě méiyǒu ba? 怎么这几天我们这儿都没有报纸? 你们那儿也没有吧?
8. Qǐng Zhōu Xiānsheng tán tān tā (shì) zěnmé zài Zhōngguó zuò fúzhuang mǎimai (de). 请周先生谈谈他(是)怎么在中国做服装买卖(的)。
9. Wáng Xiǎojié hěn xǐhuan Zhōngwén; tā shuō tā míngnián hái yào dào Táiběi qù jìxù xué. 王小姐很喜欢中文; 她说她明年还要到台北去继续学。
10. Nǐ shuō de shì búshì Fǎwén de "zàijiàn"? Wǒ bùzhīdào nǐ huì shuō Fǎguó huà. 你说的是不是法文的“再见”? 我不知道你会说法国话。

COMMUNICATION EXERCISES

Exercise 1

Role Playing

Goal: To rent an apartment.

Procedure: Your teacher will assign you to work with another student. One of you must play the customer and the other, the salesperson. The customer will say what he/she wants using the graph and the salesperson will quote the price.

<u>Rms</u>	<u>Type</u>	<u>Furn/Unfurn</u>	<u>Condition</u>	<u>Rent/Month</u>
2 rooms	one bedroom, one living room	furnished	good but old	\$350
3 rooms	one bedroom, one living room, one dining room	unfurnished	not too good	\$400
3 rooms	one bedroom, one living room, one dining room	furnished	good, new	\$500
4 rooms	two bedrooms, one living room, one dining room	unfurnished	good but old	\$475

A sample of how the conversation might go is given below:

Li: How are you. Do you want something?

Brown: Yes, we want to rent an apartment. (a)

Li: How many rooms?

Brown: Three rooms. A bedroom, a living room, also a dining room.

Li: It's \$400 to 500 per month for three rooms.

Brown: That's very expensive. How about a two-room apartment.

Li: A two-room, furnished apartment is \$350.

Brown: Can we go and look at it? (a)

Li: O.K.

(They go to the apartments)

Brown: This is very good furniture. Is it new?

Li: No. It's two years old.

Exercise 2

Interpretation Exercise

Two students will act as interpreters alternately translating Chinese to English and then exchanging places. While staying at a suburban hotel in Wuhan waiting for the next day's boat to Chongqing, an American tourist meets a local student also on his way to Sichuan. Here is their conversation.

C: Xiānsheng, nǐ hǎo a?

A: I'm fine. How about you, my comrade?

C: Wǒ hǎo, xièxie. Nǐ shì Měiguó rén ma? Shénme shíhou dào Wǔhàn?

A: Yes, I'm an American. I arrived here yesterday. I am planning to travel to Sichuan Province. Are you a student? Where did you come from?

C: Wǒ shì xuésheng, wǒmen xuéxiào zài Chéngdū; kěshì wǒ jiā zài Hūnán. Wǒ xiànzài yào qù Chóngqīng.

A: Isn't it true that [when] going to Chengdu, it is possible not to go via Chongqing? Why do you want to go to Chongqing?

C: Shìde, qù Chéngdū kéyǐ bùjīng Chóngqīng. Wǒ zhèicì qù Chóngqīng shì yīnwei wǒ xiǎng qù kàn yīwei hǎo péngyou. Nǐ (shì) zuò chuán dào Sìchuān qù ma?

A: That's right. I'll go by boat which will depart for Chongqing tomorrow morning. When will you leave Wuhan?

C: Wǒ yě shì zuò míngtiān shàngwǔde chuán zǒu. Wǒmen yīkuàir zǒu, hǎo buhǎo?

A: Marvelous! In that case, we will be able to continue our chat on the boat. This afternoon I want to go to the city to look around. You still haven't eaten, I suppose. How about we have lunch together.

C: Hǎo, wǒ qīng nǐ. Nǐ zhèicì shì dìyīcì lái Zhōngguó ma?

A: That's right. This is the first time.

C: Nǐ dìyīcì lái Zhōngguó zěnmē yào xiān qù Sìchuān ne?

A: It is because I have been told that Sìchuān is very beautiful, and things are also inexpensive. I really want to look at it myself. I plan to look around in Chóngqīng for five days first, and then go to Chéngdū for (another) five days. (a)

C: Nǐ zhēn huì shuōhuà. Nàme, zhōngwǔ wǒ qǐng nǐ chī Sìchuān cài.

A: So, while on the boat tomorrow, I will treat you.

Exercise 3

What Do You Say?

1. A friend is going on a trip. Tell him you presume he is going to Běijīng by plane. Ask if he goes via Hongkong. Ask him when he plans to leave. (a & b)
2. Tell someone this is your first time coming to the United States. You came by plane from Mainland China. You plan to stay two years and continue to go to school. (a & b)
3. You are going to Běijīng. Say you are leaving tomorrow morning; you are going by plane, first to Shànghǎi, then to Běijīng. You plan to stay there two months. (a, b & c)
4. A friend is going away. Ask where he is going, and when he is leaving here. How is he going, by plane, train or ship? Ask if this is his first trip there. (b & c)
5. Someone comes to see you. Politely ask him to sit down. Ask him what he would like to drink. Say you have Chinese alcoholic drinks or soft drinks.
6. Tell someone you don't like to travel by train or plane. Ask where you can rent an automobile. Say you have to go to New York. (b)
7. You have just arrived. Tell someone you arrived from China yesterday. You came by boat. You leave tomorrow afternoon for New York. You are going by plane. (a, b & c)
8. Tell someone you would like to go to China to visit. You cannot go this year; you have no money. You plan on going next year. Ask which is cheaper, plane or ship. (a, b & c)
9. You meet someone. Ask where he/she has come from. Ask how they traveled, by train or plane. Ask how many days they are staying and at which hotel. (b & c)
10. Tell someone you are truly sorry but you have to leave now. You are leaving here for San Francisco this afternoon, riding in a friend's car. (a, b & c)
11. Tell someone this is not your car; you rent it and pay \$30 per day. Say you have a car, but it is in New York and you came here by plane. (b)
12. You have been asked a question. Say, "That's correct;" going to New York by plane is not expensive, it is only \$400. Going by car is less expensive but would require four days. (a)

Exercise 4

Join The 30,000-Mile Travel Club

Each student will make up a travel plan and share it with the class. Every report must include the "cóng ... dào" pattern. The unofficial distances are:

France to England	150 miles*
France to Germany	180 miles
England to the United States	5,000 miles
United States to China	7,000 miles
United States to Japan	6,000 miles
Japan to China	1,500 miles
England to Russia (Èguó)	2,500 miles
Italy to France	600 miles
Italy to Russia	3,500 miles
Italy to China	7,000 miles

Sample Chinese statement for part of trip:

Wǒ zuò fēijī cóng Yīngguó dào Měiguó lái kàn péngyou.
 (I am coming to the States from England by airplane to visit
 my friends.) 5,000 miles

* The Chinese word for miles is Yīnglǐ.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

A. Chinese-English: Cover the Pinyin text below. Teacher: Randomly select sentences and read each one twice with a short pause between readings. Student: Say aloud the English equivalent. (translate)

1. Wǒ jìhuà míngnián cóng zhèr dào Běijīng qù kànkàn. Zhèi shì wǒ dìyíci qù. Wǒ jìhuà zài nèr zhū liǎngge yuè.

2. Zhāng Dàmíng gào song wǒ tā mèimei jīnnián sìyuè yào cóng Shànghǎi dào Měiguó lái shàngxué. Wǒ xiǎng tā kéyì zhūzai tāmen jiā.

3. Cóng Jiùjīnshān dào Niūyuē qù de fēijī hěn duō. Měitiān shàngwǔ yǒu sì-wǔcì, xiàwǔ yě yǒu jìcì. Nǐ xiǎng shénme shíhou zǒu?

4. Wǒ bùxǐhuan zuò fēijī, wǒ xǐhuan zuò huǒchē. Wǒ zìjǐ yǒu qìchē, kěshì cóng zhèr dào Niūyuē qù děi zǒu wǔ-liùtiān.

5. Xiānsheng, qǐngzuò. Nín yào búyào hē jiǔ. Wǒmen zhèr yǒu jiǔ, yě yǒu qìshuǐ. Nǐ xiǎng chī shénme? Wǒmen zhèr yǒu Zhōngcān, yě yǒu Xìcān.

6. Nǐ nēitiān líkāi zhèr? Cóng zhèr dào Běijīng qù jīngguo Shànghǎi ma? Děi zǒu jítian? Nǐ zhīdao ma?

7. Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yíge jiù qìchē, wǒ bùxiǎng mǎi xīnde. Wǒ péngyou gào song wǒ wǒ yīnggai zū yíbu qìchē, kěshì wǒ xiǎng tài guì.

8. Wǒmen jiā kètīnglǐ de yīzi bùduō, wǒ xiǎng wǒ děi mǎi liǎngbǎ. Wǒ jìhuà míngtiān dào jiājùdiàn qù kànkàn.

9. Wǒ fùqin gào song wǒ, wǒ yīnggāi jìxù xué Zhōngwén. Wǒ xiǎng wǒ yīnggāi dào Běijīng qù shàngxué, tāmen nèr yǒu hěnhǎode xuéxiào.

10. Zhèi jiùshi wǒ mǎi de xīn qìchē, shì zài Měiguó zuò de, búshì Rìběn zuò de. Zhèige chē hěn xiǎo, kěshì kéyì zuò wǔge rén.

11. Zuótiān wǒ yǒu liǎngge péngyou cóng Zhōngguó dào Měiguó lái. Xiànzài tāmen zài Jiùjīnshān, kěshì míngtiān tāmen dào zhèr lái, zhūzai wǒ jiā.

12. Zhèi shì Rìběn zuò de qìchē ba. Xiànzài mǎi xīnde hěn guì, děi liù-qiqiankuài qián. Wǒ xiǎng wǒ yīnggāi mǎi jiùde.

13. Wǒ jìhuà míngnián dào Běijīng qù kànkàn. Wǒ xiǎng xiān dào Xiānggǎng qù zhū jitiān zài zuò chuán dào Shànghǎi. Cóng Shànghǎi zuò fēijī qù Běijīng.

14. Nǐ shénme shíhou líkāi zhèr? Shì shàngwǔ háishi xiàwǔ? Nǐ zuò fēijī qù háishi zuò huǒchē qù?

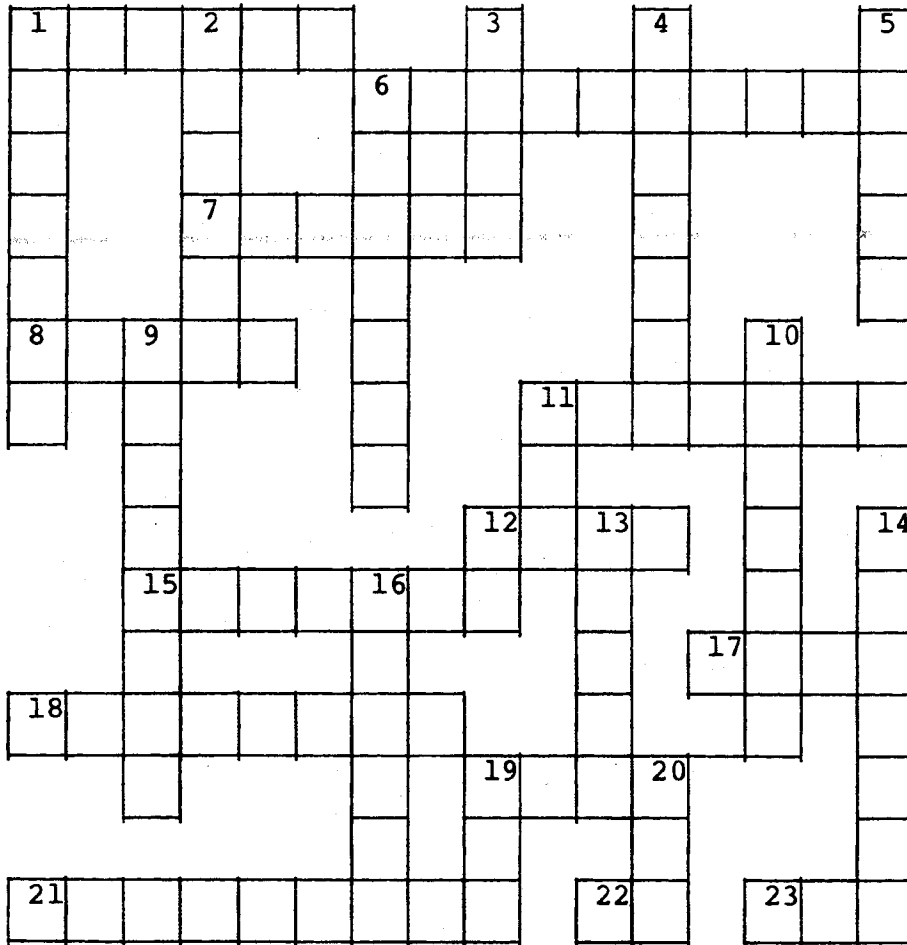
B. Chinese-English: Fluency Exercises. Student: Read aloud the sentences below (as selected by the teacher), concentrating on fluency, pronunciation and tones. Then give your instructor the English equivalent for each sentence.

1. Zhèi búshì jiājùdiàn, zhèijiā mài qìchē, yǒu xīnde yě yǒu jiùde. Dōu shì Rìben zuò de. Tāmen zhèr yě kéyi zù qìchē.
2. Nǐ nǚpéngyou gàocong wǒ nǐ míngnián jìhuà dào Běijīng qù shàngxué. Wǒmen tántan hǎo bùhǎo? Nǐ xiǎng shénme shíhou qù.
3. Wǒ zhèicì cóng zhèr dào Niūyuē qù wǒ jìhuà zuò chuán qù. Cóngqián wǒ měicì qù dōu shì zuò fēijī. Wǒ xiǎng zuò chuán qù dǐ zǒu liǎngge yuè.
4. Wǒmen jiāli de jiājù búsuàn tài hǎo, yǒu hěnduō jiùde, shì péngyou sònggei wǒmen de. Wǒ jìhuà mǎi xīnde kěshì xiànzài méiyǒu qián.
5. Nǐ yīnggāi xiān chīfàn zài dào xuéxiào qù. Xuéxiào nèr méiyǒu hǎo fànguǎnr. Zhèijiā Zhōngguó fànguǎnr hěn hǎo, wǒmen zài zhèr chī hǎo bùhǎo?
6. Nǐ nàme zuò tài máfan, nǐ méiyǒu shípǔ ma? Nǐ yīnggāi mǎi yībēn Zhōngguó shípǔ. Shūdiànli yǒu hěn duō, cái wǔkuàiqián yībēn.
7. Jīntiān bàoshang shuō yǒu yìjiā jiājùdiàn mài shūjiàzi, cái èrshikuàiqián yíge. Wǒ xiǎng èrshikuàiqián búsuàn guì, nǐ shuō ne?
8. Nǐ míngtiān shénme shíhou líkāi jiā? Shì shàngwǔ hái shì xiàwǔ? Zhèishì nǐ dìyìcì qù Niūyuē ma? Nǐ shì búshì zuò fēijī qù?
9. Cóng Zhōngguó Dàlù dào Měiguó lái shàngxué de xuésheng hěn duō, měinián yǒu liǎng-sanqian. Tāmen dōu xiǎng jìxù xué Yīngwén.
10. Bàoshang shuō yǒu yìjiā màiqìchēde, jīntiān tāmen yǒu yìbù piányi qìchē, cái yìqiāнкуài qián. Wǒ xiǎng yìqiāнкуài búsuàn piányi yě búsuàn guì.
11. Wáng Xiānsheng, qǐngzuò, Nín hē shénme? Wǒ zhèr yǒu Zhōngguó píjiǔ, yě yǒu qìshuǐ. Nǐ yào hē shénme?
12. Chūzū de qìchē bùdou shì xīnde, yǒu hěn duō jiùde. Wǒ měicì cóng zhèr dào Jiùjīnshān qù dōu shì zuò péngyoude chē qù. Wǒ bù-xǐhuan zū chē.
13. Xiānggǎng yǒu hěn duō hěn dà de yínháng. Wǒ yǒu yíge péngyou zài Xiānggǎng yíge yínháng gōngzuò. Tā měinián qù yìcì Dàlù.

C. English-Chinese: Teacher: Randomly assign sentences to each Student. Student: First read the sentence carefully, then translate into Chinese. Concentrate on word-order, fluency, tones and pronunciation.

1. My older brother doesn't sell furniture; he sells cars. The cars he sells are all produced in Japan, and all are very expensive.
2. Please sit down. Here's a chair. What would you like to drink? I have wine, beer, and also soda. What do you want to chat about today?
3. That's right, doing it that way is really a lot of trouble. You ought to have a Chinese cookbook. I have two at home. I'll give you one tomorrow.
4. I'm planning to go to New York tomorrow by plane. Going by train is too much trouble and would require four or five days.
5. From here to San Francisco there are no trains. [One] can go by plane and also by automobile. How do you plan to go?
6. I have to buy a Chinese dictionary. I think I'll go to San Francisco tomorrow morning. I don't have a car, but I can ride in a friend's car.
7. At present, many people go each year from America to Beijing to look around. I like to go by ship, but I hear that there are no ships going to China.
8. Going to Beijing from America by plane, [one] can go by way of Hongkong. [One] can also go by way of Shanghai. There are many flights (planes) going.
9. I hear that there are some very good Chinese bookstores in San Francisco. I plan to go there today to buy a Chinese cookbook. Do you know which one is good (best)?
10. I hear you are going to New York. When are you planning to leave? In the morning or afternoon? You are going tomorrow, aren't you?
11. I hear your old home is in Texas. How do you go from here to Texas, by plane or by train? To go by car would require four or five days, right?
12. This automobile is not mine; I rented it. The rent/lease each month is \$150.00. I don't think this is too expensive; what do you say?

ENRICHMENT



ACROSS

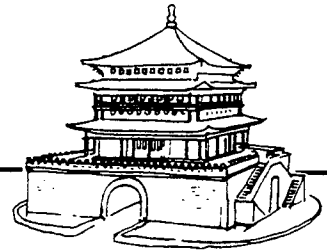
1. how _____ flies
6. one who collects money
7. You sleep on one of these.
8. us
11. TW (day)
12. myself
15. common title
17. _____ big
18. TW (month)
19. _____ chifàn, zài kànshu.
21. Saturday is the _____ of the week.
22. NR
23. like shuohuà

DOWN

1. before noon
2. mode of transportation
3. he came _____ S.F.
4. via
5. He went by _____.
6. specifies a time
9. TW
10. TW (year)
11. at
12. word
13. I _____ to go tomorrow.
14. _____ of a set of books.
16. He _____ 203 Hudson St.
19. Ta búyao jǐude, yào _____ de.
20. QW

LESSON 12

INTRODUCTION



This Lesson deals with:

- Completed action le, with or without an object.
- Completed action, negative with méi.
- Completed action in a state of suspense with (hái) méi V(O) ne.
- Use of yǐjīng, "already," in completed action.
- Use of conjunctions suǒyǐ and búguò.
- Contrasting búbì with děi and bīděi.
- Prefix xià to indicate "next" and prefix shàng to indicate "last."
- Time words qiántiān, hòutiān, wǎnshang, zǎoshang, zhōngwǔ, and the days of the week.
- Clauses in sentences of a specific nature.
- Particle of suggestion or request ba.



Tā zài fānguǎnr zuò wǎnfàn ne.

OBJECTIVES



Upon completion of this lesson you will be able to:

- a. Ask and answer questions about whether or not some action has been completed.
- b. Within vocabulary limits, ask and answer questions about when something will happen or has happened.
- c. State that you must do something.

GLOSSARY



1. bànshì 办事 VO: to handle, to manage, or to attend to things (affairs)
- a. bàn 办 V: to handle, to manage, to attend to, to do
 Wǒ jīntiān děi bàn sānjiàn shì.
 (I must do three things today.)
2. Běihǎi-Gōngyuán 北海公园 PW: North Sea Public Park
- a. gōngyuán 公园 N: park
3. bìděi 必得 AV: must, have to (stronger than děi)
4. búbì 不必 AV: need not, not have to (not necessary)
 Nǐ bìděi gěi ta jiǔ, búguò tā búbì gěi nǐ qián.
 (You have to give him alcoholic drinks, but he doesn't have to give you money.)
5. búguò 不过 CNJ: but, however
 Wǒ xiǎng mǎi shū, búguò, wǒ méi qián.
 (I would like to buy books, however, I don't have money.)
6. bùzhǐ 不只 CNJ: not only, not merely, not just
 Zhè bùzhǐ shì nǐ yíge rén de shì, yě shì dàjiā de shì.
 (This is not merely your own affair, it's also everybody's affair.)
7. dài 带 V: to take, to bring, to carry
 Nǐ měitiān dài duōshao qián dào xuéxiào qù?
 (How much money do you carry to school everyday?)
 Wǒmen zhèicì qù, búdài hái zi.
 (This time when we go we won't take the children.)
 Tāmen zhèicì lái, búdài hái zi.
 (This time when they come, they won't bring the children.)
8. diàncì zhǎnlǎn(huì) 电器展览(会) N: electrical equipment exhibition
- a. diàncì 电器 N: electrical equipment

- b. zhǎnlǎnhuì 展览会 N: exhibition
- c. zhǎnlǎn 展览 V/N: to exhibit, to put on display, to show/exhibit
9. fēijīchǎng 飞机场 N: airport, airfield
-chǎng 一场 BF: open field, public place
10. hái méi...ne 还没...呢 PT: haven't yet...
Tā hái méilái ne. (He hasn't come yet.)
Nǐ hái méigěi qián ne. (You haven't paid yet.)
11. hòutiān 后天 TW: day after tomorrow
a. dàhòutiān 大后天 TW: three days from now (day after day after tomorrow)
Hòutiān shì xīngqīsi, (The day after tomorrow is Thursday; three days from now is Friday.)
dàhòutiān shì xīngqīwǔ.
12. jiàn 见 V: to see, to meet [with] (more formal than kàn)
Wǒ jīntiān qù jiàn lǎoshī. (I'm going to go and meet with my teacher today.)
a. kànjiàn 看见 V: to see, to perceive
b. hòutiān jiàn 后天见 IE: See you day after tomorrow
13. jiē 接 V: to meet and pick up someone (at airport, train station, etc.)
Shéi qù jiē Fāng Bǎolán? (Who is going to go to meet and pick up Fang Baolan?)
14. jiē 街 N: street (M: -tiáo)
Zhèitiáo jiē yǒu shūdiàn ma? (Are there any bookstores on this street? OR Is there a bookstore on this street?)
a. jiēshàng 街上 N: on the street
15. jiù 就 A: just, only
Tā jiù huì chī. (He only knows how to eat.)
Wǒ jiù yǒu shíkuài qián. (I have just \$10.00. OR I have only \$10.00)

16. kāihuì 开会 VO/V: to hold a meeting, to attend a meeting
- a. huì 会 N: meeting, conference, convention, gathering, party
Tāmen měitiān kāihuì.
(They hold a meeting every day.)
Wǒ xiànzài qù kāihuì qù.
(I'm going now to attend/hold a meeting.)
17. kāishǐ 开始 V: to start, to begin
- Tāmen míngtiān kāishǐ xiě Zhōngguó zì.
(They start writing Chinese characters tomorrow.)
Huì shénme shíhou kāishǐ?
(When does the meeting begin?)
18. kèqì 客气 SV: to be polite, courteous
- a. búkèqì 不客气 SV/IE: to be impolite, rude/don't mention it
19. -le 了 P: (marker of completed action)
- Tā lái le.
(He has come. OR He came.)
20. máng 忙 SV: to be busy, to be in a hurry
- Wǒ xiànzài hěn máng.
(I'm very busy now.)
Nǐ máng shénme?
(What's the hurry? OR What are you [so] busy about?)
21. qiántiān 前天 TW: day before yesterday
- a. dàqiántiān 大前天 TW: three days ago (day before day before yesterday)
Qiántiān shì Jiǔhào,
(The day before yesterday was the 9th; three days ago was the 8th.)
dàqiántiān shì Bāhào.
22. shì(qíng) 事(情) N: affair, matter, thing, business (M: jiàn)
Wǒ jīntiān děi bàn wǔjiàn hěn yàojiàn de shìqing.
(I have five very important things I must to do today.)
23. suǒyǐ 所以 MA: so, therefore, as a result
- Nǐ bùlái, suǒyǐ wǒ búqù.
(You don't come; therefore I won't/don't go.)
24. xīngqī 星期 N: week
- a. xīngqīrì 星期日 TW: Sunday

- b. xīngqīyī 星期一 TW: Monday
- c. xīngqīèr 星期二 TW: Tuesday
- d. xīngqīsān 星期三 TW: Wednesday
- e. xīngqīsì 星期四 TW: Thursday
- f. xīngqīwǔ 星期五 TW: Friday
- g. xīngqīliù 星期六 TW: Saturday
25. yǐjīng 已经 A: already
 Tā yǐjīng mǎile (He has already bought [it].)
26. yǒushì 有事 IE/VO: to be busy, occupied
- a. méi(yǒu)shì 没(有)事 IE/VO: to be free (not busy)
 Wǒ Xīngqīsān yǒushì, (On Wednesday I'm busy, I
 bùnéng qù. Xīngqīsì can't go. Thursday I'm
 méishì, kéyì qù. free, I can go.)
27. wèishénme? 为什么? MA: Why?
 Zuótiān nǐ wéishénme méi- Why didn't you come yester-
 lái? day?)
 Wèishénme nǐ zuótiān méilái? (Why did you not come
 yesterday?)
28. wǔfàn 午饭 N: noon meal, lunch
- a. wǎnfàn 晚饭 N: evening meal, dinner
- b. wǎnshàng 晚上 TW: evening
- c. zǎofàn 早饭 N: breakfast
- d. zǎoshàng 早上 TW: morning (6-11 a.m. approx.)
- e. zhōngfàn 中饭 N: noon meal, lunch
29. xià(ge)xīngqīwǔ TW: Friday of next week
 下(个)星期五
- a. zhè(ge)xīngqīwǔ TW: Friday of this week
 这(个)星期五
- b. shàng(ge)xīngqīwǔ TW: Friday of last week
 上(个)星期五

OLD WORDS WITH NEW MEANINGS/FUNCTIONS

30. -duō NU: plus, and more, over, odd

When duō is used in approximations, there are two basic patterns:

(1) For numbers ending in zero: NU-duo-M

èrshíduōkuài qián	(twenty-odd dollars)
sānshíduōběn shū	(thirty-some volume)
sìbǎiduōge xuésheng	(More than 400 students)

(2) For numbers ending in a digit: NU-M-duo

liǎngkuàiduō qián	(over two dollars less than three)
shísānkuàiduō qián	(over thirteen dollars less than fourteen)

31. gēn ... yíkuàir PT: together with

32. méi- PT: (marker of negative or non-completed action)

Tā hái méilái ne.	(He still hasn't come yet.)
Tā méilái.	(He didn't come./He hasn't come.)

COMMUNICATIVE EXCHANGES



Lái kāihuì - Coming to a Meeting

Frame 1

- | | | |
|---|---|--|
| 1 | B: Nǐ shuō nǐ fùmǔ yào cǒng Guǎngzhōu lái kàn nǐ. Tāmen lái ma? | You said your parents were coming from Guangzhou to see you. Have they come? |
| 2 | H: Wǒ fùqin lái le. Wǒ mǔqin méilái. Wǒ fùqin shì lái Běijīng kāihuì de, bù zhǐshì lái kàn wǒ de. | My father came. My mother didn't come. My father came to Beijing to attend a meeting; he didn't just come to see me. |
| 3 | B: Nǐ méidào fēijīchǎng qù jiē tā ma? | Didn't you go to the airport to meet and pick him up? |
| 4 | H: Nèitiān wǒ yǒushì. Shì wǒ àiren qù jiē tā de. Lái kāihuì de hái yǒu wǒ fùqin de jiwèi péngyou. | On that day I was busy. It was my wife who went to meet him. (Among) those who came to attend the meeting, there were also a few friends of my father. |

Notes:

1 Completed action with le. When the particle le follows verbs of action, it indicates a completion of the action.

Tā lái le.
Tā qù le.

He has come. OR He came.
He has gone. OR He went.

Sometimes an adverb makes the completed action more evident (See exchange #10).

Tā yǐjīng lái le.
Tā yǐjīng qù le.

He has already come.
He has already gone.

Pattern for asking questions in completed action. Listed below are the various ways of asking questions about actions already completed.

Tā lái ma? (simple ma)
Tā lái méilái?
(choice-type)
Tā lái méiyǒu?
(choice-type)
Tā méilái ma?
(negative question)

Did/Has he come?
Did/Has he come?
Did/Has he come?
Didn't/Hasn't he come?

Frame 2

- | | | |
|---|--|---|
| 5 | B: Nǐmen nàitiān qǐng tāmen chīfànle méiyóu? | Did you invite them to eat that day? |
| 6 | H: Méiyóu. Nàitiān wǒ gēn wǒ àiren dōu hěn máng, suǒyǐ méiqǐng tāmen. Búguò, dìèrtiān wǒmen qǐng tāmen le. | No, we didn't. On that day, my wife and I were very busy; therefore, we didn't invite them. However, the next day we did invite them. |
| 7 | B: Nǐ fùqin zhùde nèijiā fàndiàn zài nàitiáo jiē? Wǒ xiǎng qù kànkàn tā. | On what street is the hotel where your father is staying? I want to go to see him. |
| 8 | H: Búbì kèqi. Hòutiān nǐ gēn wǒmen yíkuàr qù Běihǎi Gōngyuán chī wǔfàn, hǎo ma? | [You] need not be polite. Go with us to the North Sea Park the day after tomorrow, and we'll have lunch together, okay? |

Notes:

5 Qǐng introduces a sentence. Some verbs in Chinese introduce sentences the same way that other verbs precede objects. Qǐng, "please, to request, invite," is one of these important verbs.

Qǐng tāmen dào Shànghǎi lái.	Invite them to come to Shanghai.
Qǐng tā mǎi zhège yǐzi.	Request/ask him to buy this chair.

More completed action questions. As with the directional verbs lái, "to come," and qù, "to go," questions can be phrased in four different ways when using other verbs.

Nǐmen nàitiān qǐng tāmen chīfàn le méiyóu?	On that day did you invite them to eat?
Nǐmen nàitiān qǐng tāmen chīfàn le ma?	"
Nǐmen nàitiān qǐng tāmen chīfàn le méiqǐng?	"
Nǐmen nàitiān méiqǐng tāmen chīfàn ma?	On that day, didn't you invite them to eat?

The first example is the most common.

6 Another polite refusal. Another way of refusing an invitation or request for yourself or others is by saying, Wǒmen dōu hěn máng, "We're all busy."

2 Negation of completed action with méi. When the negative particle méi (or méiyóu) is prefixed to the verb, it negates the action of the verb.

Tā méilái.

He didn't/hasn't come.

Tā méiqù.

He didn't go./He hasn't gone.

Subordinate sentence introduced by bùzhǐ shì. The sentence Wǒ fùqin shì lái kǎihuì de, bùzhǐ shì lái kàn wǒ de shows how to link a secondary reason to the primary reason in a sentence stating an action.

Tā shì lái mǎi shū de,
bùzhǐ shì lái jiē tā de
nǚpéngyou de.

He came to buy a book, not
just to meet and pick up his
girl friend.

Wǒ mǔqin shì dào chéng-
wàitou qù mǎi cài de,
bùzhǐ shì qù jiē wǒ
fùqin de.

My mother went out of town to
buy vegetables/food; she
didn't just go to meet my
father.

3 Negative méi- with CV. It is common practice to use the negative méi- (as previously with the negative bù-) as a prefix to CVs in questions and negative statements.

Tā méidào Shànghǎi qù ma? Didn't he go to Shanghai?

Tāmen méigěi wǒ dài shū lái. They didn't bring me the books.

4 A polite refusal. To avoid participating in some activity, it is an acceptable practice to say Wǒ yǒushì, "I am busy."

Shì...de as the focus construction. The shì...de pattern in Shì wǒ àiren qù jiē tā de, "It was my wife who went to meet him," is used in this instance to focus attention on "who" is doing something.

(place) Wǒ shì cóng Táiwān lái de. I came from Táiwān.

(conveyance) Tā shì zuò huǒchē qù de. He went by train.

(purpose) Tā shì lái shàngxué de ma? Did he come to attend school?

Where and when circumstances were discussed in Lesson 6, Note 4.

Introduce alternate choice(s). After stating a position, an alternate position or course can be given after saying búguò, "but, however."

Wǒ yǐjīng chīfàn le, búguò I have already eaten, but I
 wǒ gēn nǐ yīkuàir dào shall go together with you
 fānguǎnr qù. to the restaurant.

7 Clause of a specific nature. A clause of a specific nature is a clause in which the noun is specified.

Nǐ fùqīn zhù de nèijiā On what street is the hotel
 fāndiàn zài nèitiáo where your father is
 jiē? staying?

8 Time words. With the timewords in this lesson, it is possible to go three days on either side of jīntiān, "today," as shown below:

dàhòutiān	two days after tomorrow
hòutiān	day after tomorrow
míngtiān	tomorrow
jīntiān	today
zuótiān	yesterday
qiántiān	day before yesterday
dàqiántiān	two days before yesterday

It is possible to break jīntiān, "today," down into parts also.

zǎoshang morning	shàngwǔ forenoon
zhōngwǔ noon	zhōngwǔ noon
wǎnshang night/evening	xiàwǔ afternoon

Mealtimes. The three meals in Chinese are zǎofàn, "breakfast," wǔfàn/zhōngfàn, "lunch," and wǎnfàn, "dinner."

Frame 3

- | | | |
|----|--|--|
| 9 | B: Hǎo. Nǐ yào <u>dài tāmen</u>
<u>dào diàncì zhǎnlǎnhuì</u> qù
kànkān ma? | Fine. Are you going to take
them to see the electrical
equipment exhibition? |
| 10 | H: Zhǎnlǎnhuì yǐjīng <u>kāishǐle</u>
ma? | Has the exhibition already
started? |
| 11 | B: <u>Hái méikāishǐ ne.</u> Bào-
shang shuō <u>xià xīngqīwǔ</u> kāishǐ. | Not yet. The paper says that
it will start next Friday. |
| 12 | H: Nèitiān nǐ yào búyào gēn
wǒmen yīkuàir qù kànkān. | On that day do you want to go
with us to look around? |

Notes:

9 Use of CV dài. The CV dài, "to take along, to guide," is used to convey the meaning of guiding someone or of bringing something.

Wǒ dài nǐ dào nàr qù.	I'll take you there.
Wǒ dài nèixiē dōngxi dào nǐ jiāli qù.	I'll take those things to your house.

11 Action still not completed. The pattern hái méi-... ne is used to indicate that the action has not yet been completed.

hái méikàn ne	still hasn't been looked at/ read yet.
---------------	---

More time words. By using xià, "next," and shàng, "last," in combination with xīngqī, "week," or one of the weekdays listed below, it is possible to indicate whether an action happened this week, last week or will happen next week.

	<u>weekday</u>	<u>Next week</u>	<u>Last week</u>
Sunday	xīngqīrì	xià xīngqīrì	shàng xīngqīrì
Monday	xīngqīyī	xià xīngqīyī	shàng xīngqīyī
Tuesday	xīngqīèr	xià xīngqīèr	shàng xīngqīèr
Wednesday	xīngqīsān	xià xīngqīsān	shàng xīngqīsān
Thursday	xīngqīsì	xià xīngqīsì	shàng xīngqīsì
Friday	xīngqīwǔ	xià xīngqīwǔ	shàng xīngqīwǔ
Saturday	xīngqīliù	xià xīngqīliù	shàng xīngqīliù

12 Use of CV gēn. The CV gēn has been used previously as the conjunction "and," but here it is used alone as a CV to mean "with," or in a pattern gēn...yikuàir, "together with."

Qǐng nǐ gēn tāmen qù Běijīng.	Please go with them to Beijing.
Wǒ gēn tāmen yikuàir qù chīfàn.	I am going together with them to eat.

Frame 4

13	B: Duìbuqǐ, xià xīngqīwǔ wǒ yǒu jǐjiàn <u>bìdēi</u> bàn de shìqing bùnéng qù. Wǒmen <u>hòutiān</u> jiàn ba.	I'm sorry; next Friday I have a few things that I must do, so I can't go. We'll meet the day after tomorrow, okay?
----	---	--

14	H: Hǎo, hòutiān jiàn.	O.K. See you the day after tomorrow.
----	-----------------------	--------------------------------------

Notes:

13 Comparison of bǐděi, "must," and búbì, "no need to." Bì is a component of both these words, and by itself it carries the meaning of "certainly, surely, necessarily." Děi standing alone means "must, have to, need to," and is frequently used alone. Bǐděi appears redundant, but at the same time is an emphatic word implying "It is definitely necessary to...." Búbì is the opposite and means "It is not necessary to" The phrase above, bǐděi bànde shìqing, could also appear as děi bànde shìqing, but it would be less emphatic.

See you... When jiàn, "to see," follows a future time word, it is used to set up a later meeting.

Xiàwǔ jiàn

See you in the afternoon.

Míngtiān jiàn, "See you tomorrow," is probably the most frequent.

Comparison between kàn and kànjiàn. The difference between kàn and kànjiàn is that while kàn means "to look, to look at, to read," kànjiàn means "to see, to perceive."

对话

Frame 1

- | | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|--|
| 1 | B: 你说你父母要从广州来看你。他们来了吗? | You said your parents were coming from Guangzhou to see you. Have they come? |
| 2 | H: 我父亲来了, 我母亲没来。我父亲是来北京开会的, 不只是来看我的。 | My father came. My mother didn't come. My father came to Beijing to attend a meeting; he didn't just come to see me. |
| 3 | B: 你没到飞机场去接他吗? | Didn't you go to the airport to meet and pick him up? |
| 4 | H: 那天我有事。是我爱人去接他的。来开会的还有我父亲的几位朋友。 | On that day I was busy. It was my wife who went to meet him. (Among) those who came to attend the meeting, there were also a few friends of my father. |

Frame 2

- | | | |
|---|---|---|
| 5 | B: 你们那天请他们吃饭了没有? | Did you invite them to eat that day? |
| 6 | H: 没有。那天我跟我爱人都很忙; 所以没请他们。不过, 第二天我们请他们了。 | No, we didn't. On that day, my wife and I were very busy; therefore, we didn't invite them. However, the next day we did invite them. |
| 7 | B: 你父亲住的那家饭店在哪条街? 我想去看看他。 | On what street is the hotel where your father is staying? I want to go to see him. |
| 8 | H: 不必客气。后天你跟我们一块儿去北海公园吃午饭, 好吗? | (You) need not be polite. Go with us to the North Sea Park the day after tomorrow, and we'll have lunch together, okay? |

Frame 3

- | | | |
|----|-----------------------|--|
| 9 | B: 好。你要带他们到电器展览会去看看吗? | Fine. Are you going to take them to see the electrical equipment exhibition? |
| 10 | H: 展览会已经开始了吗? | Has the exhibition already started? |
| 11 | B: 还没开始呢。报上说下星期五开始。 | Not yet. The paper says that it will start next Friday. |
| 12 | H: 那天你要不要跟我们一块儿去看看。 | On that day do you want to go with us to look around? |

Frame 4

- | | | |
|----|-----------------------------------|--|
| 13 | B: 对不起; 下星期五我有几件必得办的事情不能去。我们后天见吧。 | I'm sorry; next Friday I have a few things that I must do, so I can't go. We'll meet the day after tomorrow, okay? |
| 14 | H: 好, 后天见。 | O.K. See you the day after tomorrow. |

SUMMARY



Frame 1

a. When the particle le follows verbs of action, it indicates a completion of action as in:

Tā lái le.	He has come./He came.
Tāmen zǒu le.	They have gone./They left.

Sometimes an adverb makes the completed action more evident.

Tāmen yǐjīng chī le.	They have already eaten.
Tā yǐjīng dào fēijī- chǎng qù le.	He has already gone to the air- port.

The four patterns used to ask a question in completed action are:

Tā qù le ma?	Did he go?/Has he gone?
Tā qù le méiqù?	"
Tā qù le méiyǒu?	"
Tā méiqù ma?	Didn't he go? /Hasn't he gone?

b. Use méi (or méiyǒu) to negate completed action.

Tā méi chī.	He didn't eat./He hasn't eaten.
-------------	---------------------------------

Méi is also used as a prefix to CVs in questions and negative statements.

Tā méidào shāngdiàn qù ma?	Didn't he go to the store?
Tā méidài wǒ qù kàn zhǎnlǎnhuì.	He didn't take me to see the exhibition.

c. The shì ... de construction is used in this lesson to focus attention on:

1. <u>place</u>	Wǒ shì dào <u>Táiwān</u> qù de.	I went to <u>Táiwān</u> .
2. <u>conveyance</u>	Tā shì zuò <u>fēijī</u> qù de.	He went by <u>plane</u> .
3. <u>purpose</u>	Tā shì lái <u>gōngzuò</u> de.	He came to <u>work</u> .

Frame 2

When a specific item must be modified in a clause, a specifier plus measure is used.

Tā xiě de zhèige zì...	This character that he wrote...
------------------------	---------------------------------

Frame 3

a. The pattern hái méi V ne is used to indicate that the action has not yet been taken or completed.

Tā hái méi chīfàn ne. He still hasn't eaten.

b. The CV dài is used to convey the idea of guiding someone or of bringing something.

Wǒ dài nǐ dào tā jiā qù. I'll take you to his house.
Wǒ dài dōngxi dào nǐ I'll take things to your house.
jiā qù.

c. Extended use of CV gēn "with" or of the combination gēn ... yikuàir "together with ..."

Qǐng nǐ gēn tāmen dào Please go with them to the
diànlì zhǎnlǎnhuì qù. electrical equipment exhibi-
tion.
Wǒ gēn tāmen yikuàir I am going together with them
dào Zhǎnlǎnhuì qù. to the exhibition.

Frame 4

a. When comparing bìděi "must" and búbì "no need to," it is necessary to remember that they are opposites and also that bìděi is more emphatic than the singular děi.

DRILLS I



A: Transformation Drill: This drill assumes you have mastered the four ways to ask a completed action question. The teacher will give you one of the four ways. You must reply with one of the other three:

(T) Shàng(ge) xīngqiwǔ tā lái le ma? (Did he come last Friday?)	(S) Shàng(ge) xīngqiwǔ tā lái le méiyǒu? (Did he come last Friday?)
--	--

B: Response Drill. This drill assumes you have mastered the four basic patterns of response to a completed action question. The teacher will ask you a question. You must reply according to the cue.

(T) Tā lái le ma? (Has he come?) cue: <u>He has</u>	(S) Tā lái le. (He has come.)
---	----------------------------------

C. Transformation Drill. Change the teacher's statement concerning a present negative situation to a completed negative situation.

(T) Tā bù lái. (He isn't coming.)	(S) Tā méi lái. (He hasn't come.) (He didn't come.)
--------------------------------------	---

D. Expansion Drill. Expand the teacher's positive statement to include a second reason based on the teacher's cue.

(T) Tā shì lái kāihuì de. (He comes to attend a meeting.) cue: <u>kàn wǒ</u>	(S) Tā shì lái kāihuì de, bù zhǐ shì lái kàn wǒ de. (He comes to attend a conference, not only to see me.)
---	---

E. Response Drill. Respond to the teacher's questions with "I didn't ..." in Chinese.

(T) Nèitiān nǐ qùle ma?
(Did you go [there]
that day?)

(S) Nèitiān wǒ hěn máng, wǒ
méiqù.
OR Nèitiān wǒ yǒushì, wǒ méi-
qù.
(That day I was busy; I
didn't go.)

F. Response Drill: Respond to the teacher's questions with yǐ-jīng, "already."

(T) Tā mǔqīn lái le ba?
(I presume that his
mother has come.)

(S) Tā mǔqīn yǐjīng lái le.
(His mother already came.)

G. Transformation Drill. Convert the teacher's děi or bìděi, "must," to búbì, "need not."

(T) Xiàxīngqīwǔ nǐ děi gěi tā
wǔbǎikuài qián.
(You must give her \$500
next Friday.)

(S) Xiàxīngqīwǔ nǐ búbì
gěi tā wǔbǎikuài qián.
(You don't have to give
her \$500 next Friday.)

H. Transformation Drill. Convert the following choice-type questions into V-le ... méiyǒu types of questions as shown in the example.

(T) Nǐ mǎile méimǎi jīntiān de
bào zhǐ?
(Have you bought today's
newspaper?)

(S) Nǐ mǎile jīntiān de bào zhǐ
méiyǒu?
(Have you bought today's
newspaper?)

I. Expansion Drill. Expand the teacher's statement with suóyì, "therefore," to introduce the consequence.

(T) Tā méiyǒu qián. (He doesn't have money.) cue: <u>does not want to buy</u> <u>a car.</u>	(S) Tā méiyǒu qián, suóyì tā bùyào mǎi qìche. (He doesn't have money; therefore he doesn't want to buy a car.)
--	--

J. Transformation Drill. Convert the following questions into "... le méiyǒu" types of questions as shown in the example.

(T) Nǐ mǔqīn dào Jiāzhōu lái kàn nǐ le ma? (Has your mother come to California to see you?)	(S) Nǐ mǔqīn dào Jiāzhōu lái kàn nǐ le méiyǒu? (Has your mother come to California to see you?)
--	--

K. Expansion Drill. Add a clause with búguò, "but, however," to the teacher's statement.

(T) Wǒ méiqù jiē wǒ fùqīn. (I didn't go to meet my father.) cue: <u>my wife went.</u>	(S) Wǒ méiqù jiē wǒ fùqīn, búguò, wǒ tàitai qùle. (I didn't go to meet my father, but my wife went.)
--	---

L. Response Drill. Answer the following questions using the yīnwei ... , suóyì pattern based on the idea provided in the cue.

(T) Nǐ wèishénme búzuò huǒchē cóng Guǎngzhōu dào Chéngdū qù? (Why didn't you take the train to Chengdu from Guang- zhou.) cue: <u>méiyǒu qián</u>	(S) Yīnwei wǒ méiyǒu qián, suóyì wǒ búname zǒu. (Because I didn't have money, so I didn't do so.)
--	--

M. Transformation Drills. With another student convert the teacher's statement from a general modifying clause to a specific modifying clause. As one of you uses a singular specific clause, the other uses a plural specific clause.

(T) Zuótiān gēn wǒmen yīkuàir
chīfàn de nǚshì dōu shì lái
kāihuì de ma?

(Did all the ladies who
ate together with us yester-
day come to attend the
meeting?)

(S1) Zuótiān gēn wǒmen yī-
kuàir chīfàn de nèiwèi nǚshì
shì lái kāihuì de ma?

(Did that lady who ate
together with us yesterday
come to attend the meeting?)

(S2) Zuótiān gēn wǒmen yīkuàir
chīfàn de nèixiē/nèijiwèi nǚ-
shì dōu shì lái kāihuì de ma?

(Did those ladies who ate
together with us yesterday
come to attend the meeting?)

N. Response Drill. Respond to the teacher's question with the hái ... ne pattern.

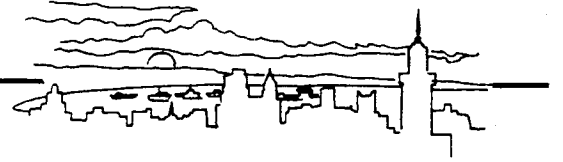
(T) Nǐ gēge yǒu qìchē, nǐ dìdi
yě yǒu, nǐ yǒu ma?

(Both your older and younger
brothers have a car. How about you?)

(S) Wǒ hái méiyǒu ne.

(I don't have one yet.)

DRILLS II



A. Say that now someone is still doing something somewhere.

EX: Nǐ fùqin xiànzài hái zài xuéxiào jìāoshū ba.

SUB xiànzài hái zài PW VO ba

Lǐ Xiānsheng		Rìběn	zuò mǎimai
Mǎ Tóngzhì		Fàguó	xué huàhuàr
Nǐ àiren		xuéxiào	shàngxué
Zhōu Xiáojie	xiànzài hái zài	Běijīng	xué Zhōngwén ba.
Tā dìdi		yóujú	gōngzuò ba.
Wáng Dànián		tā lǎojiā	mài jiājù

B. Say that someone really likes something because it was given or done by a certain person.

EX: Wǒ fùqin hěn xǐhuan zhèizhang huàr, yīnwei shì tā mǔqin huà de.

SUB hěn xǐhuan SP-M N,

	zhèizhī	máobī,
	zhèipíng	jiǔ,
Wǒ fùqin hěn xǐhuan	zhèixie	jiājù
Wǒ àiren	zhèijiàn	yīfu,
	zhèiběn	shū,
		shípǔ,

yīnwei shì tā N V-de

		fùqin		
		péngyou		
yīnwei	shì tā	lǎoshī	sòng	
		fùmǔ		de.
		mǔqin	gěi tā	
		zì jǐ	mǎi	

C. Ask what time someone has done something.

EX: Zhōu Xiānsheng láile ma? Tā shì shénme shíhou láide?

SUB V-le ma?

Zhào Tàitai	zǒule	
Chén Tóngzhì	líkāile	
Wáng Xiáojie	qù fēijīchǎng le	
Nǐ mǔqīn	kàn zhǎnlǎn le	ma?
Tā gēge	xué Zhōngwén le	
Nǐmen	chīfàn le	

PN shì shénme shíhou V-de

		zǒu	
		líkāi	
		qù	
Tā	shì shénme shíhou	kàn	de.
		xué	
Nǐmen		chī	

D. Ask someone if he/she knows on which street is the place where someone else does something.

EX: Nǐ zhīdao Mǎ Mínglǐ zhù de nèijiā fàndiàn zài něitiáo jiē ma?

SUB zhīdao PN V-de

	Wáng Dànián	shàng	
	Lǐ Tóngzhì	gōngzuò	
Nǐ zhīdao	Gāo Tàitai	jiāoshū	de
	Wū Xiáojie	gōngzuò	
	Zhào Xiānsheng		
	Tā gēge	zū	

nèige N zài něitiáo jiē ma?

	xuéxiào	
	yínháng	
nèige	xuéxiào	zài něitiáo jiē ma?
nèijiā	shāngdiàn	
nèidòng	gōngyù	
	fànguǎnr	

E. Ask someone how come he knows (or doesn't know) that another person wants to go somewhere to do something.

EX: Nǐ zěnmē zhīdao Wáng Xiānshēng yào dào Xiānggǎng qù niàn Zhōngwén?

SUB zěnmē (bu)zhīdao N yào dào

	Mǎ Xiǎojie	
	Lín Tàitai	
Nǐ zěnmē (bu)zhīdao	Gāo Nǚshī	yào dào
	Fāng Bǎolán	
	Lǐ Déxián	
	tā fùqin	

PW qù VO

Fàguó		xué huàhuà?
Qīngdǎo		kàn péngyou?
Shànghǎi	qù	zuò mǎimai?
Niǔyuē		kàn zhǎnlǎnhuì?
Dézhōu		shàngxué?
Jiùjīnshān		jiē péngyou?

F. Say that someone wants someone else to go somewhere to continue doing something.

EX: Wǒ fùqin yào wǒ dào Běijīng qù jìxù xuéxí Zhōngwén.

SUB yào PN/N dào

Tā àiren		tā	
Wǒ gēge		wǒ	
Wǒ	yào	Mǎ Tóngzhì	dào
Tā		tā mèimei	
Wáng Tàitai		tā xiānshēng	

PW qù jìxù VO

Xiānggǎng		zuò mǎimai.
Jiùjīnshān		jiāoshū.
kètīng	qù jìxù	kàn bào.
Dézhōu		shàngxué.
Rìběn		xué huàhuà.

G. Say that someone first wants to do one thing, and then to do something else next.

EX: Wǒ xiǎng xiān dào Fàguó qù kànkàn, zài zuò fēijī qù Běijīng.

SUB xiǎng xiān dào PW qù kànkàn,

Tā	Xiānggǎng
Lǐ Tóngzhì	Běijīng
Wǒ mǔqīn	Jiùjīnshān
Mǎ Xiānsheng xiǎng xiān dào	Niǔyuē qù kànkàn,
Zhāng Měilì	Guǎngzhōu

zài zuò N qù PW

chuán	Shànghǎi.
huǒchē	Qīngdǎo.
fēijī	Dézhōu.
zài zuò qìchē	qù Jiānádà.
chuán	Xiānggǎng.

H. Say that someone plans to go somewhere to do something during a specified time.

EX: Wǒ jìhuà míngnián wǔyuè sān-sìhào dào Běijīng qù kàn tā.

SUB jìhuà TW

Zhào Tóngzhì	xiàyuè qī-bāhào
Wáng Dànián	hòutiān shàngwǔ
Chén Xiǎojie jìhuà	xiàyuè shíwǔhào
Gāo Défēn	jīnnián Jiǔyuè
Lín Nǚshì	míngtiān xiàwǔ
Tā	míngnián Bā-Jiǔyuè

dào PW qù VO

Niǔyuē	kàn zhǎnlǎnhuì.
Jiùjīnshān	mǎi shū.
dào Měiguó Yínháng	qù gōngzuò.
xuéxiào	xué Zhōngwén.
Xiānggǎng	jiāoshū.
chénglǐtōu	kàn péngyou.

I. Say that someone will be leaving at a specified time, and he/she would be able to arrive at another place at another specified time.

EX: Tāmen dìyītiān xiàwǔ líkāi Xiānggǎng, dìèrtiān xiàwǔ kéyi dào Shànghǎi.

SUB TW líkai PW,

Wǒmen	dìyītiān	shàngwǔ		Měiguó,
Wǒ	xīngqīsān	zǎoshang		Shànghǎi,
Tā	xīngqīliù	wǎnshang	líkai	Àndàlùè,
Wǒ fùqin	zuótian	xiàwǔ		Guǎngzhōu,
Tā dìdi	qiántiān	xiàwǔ		Shāndōng,
Wǒ àiren	dàqiántiān	wǎnshang		Rìběn,

TW kéyi dào PW •

dìèrtiān	xiàwǔ		Běijīng
xīngqīsān	wǎnshang		Xiānggǎng
dìèrtiān	zǎoshang	kéyi dào	Jiùjīnshān •
jīntiān	shàngwǔ		Niūyuē
qiántiān	zhōngwǔ		Jiānáda

DICTIONATION EXERCISES



With book closed, write down in Pinyin the following sentences dictated by your teacher. Pay special attention to spelling and tones.

1. Zhèijiàn shì nǐ bìděi qù qǐng tā bàn. 这件事你必得去请他办。
2. Wǒ yǐjīng chī zǎofàn le. Wǒ hái méi chī zhōngfàn ne. Nǐ yào qǐng wǒ chī zhōngfàn ma? 我已经吃早饭了。我还没吃中饭呢。你要请我吃中饭吗?
3. Duìbuqǐ, jīntiān zhōngwǔ wǒ yǒushì. Wǒ děi qù kāi huì. Míngtiān zài shuō ba. 对不起, 今天中午我有事。我得去开会。明天再说吧。
4. Nǐ shì cóng nǎlǐ lái de? Nǐ shì zěnméi lái de? Nǐ lái zhèlǐ zuò shénme? 你是从那里来的? 你是怎么来的? 你来这里做什么?
5. Wǒ shì cóng Dézhōu lái de. Wǒ shì zuò fēijī lái de. Wǒ shì lái shàngxué de. 我是从德州来的。我是坐飞机来的。我是来上学的。
6. Dà hòutiān wǒ yě děi qù fēijīchǎng jiē yīwèi lǎo péngyou. Wǒmen dà hòutiān zài fēijīchǎng jiàn ba. 大后天我也得去飞机场接一位老朋友。我们大后天在飞机场见吧。
7. Nǐ shénme shíhou cóng xuéxiào lái jiē wǒ? Nǐ néng bùnéng dài wǒde péngyou gēn nǐ yīkuàir lái? 你什么时候从学校来接我? 你能不能带我的朋友跟你一块儿来?
8. Wǒ xiǎng tā xià xīngqī sān lái. Wǒ zhīdao tā shì lái kàn tā hái zǐ de, tā bùzhǐ shì lái kàn wǒmen de. 我想他下星期三来。我知道他是来看他孩子的, 他不只是来看我们的。
9. Wǒ yǐjīng qǐng tā le. Kěshì tā shuō tā tài máng, bùnéng gēn wǒmen yīkuàir qù kàn nèige zhǎnlǎnhuì. Tā shuō nǐ tài kèqì. 我已经请他了。可是他说他太忙, 不能跟我们一块儿去看那个展览会。他说你太客气。
10. Nǐ jìhuà zài Niūyuēshì zhù duōshao tiān? Nǐ yào dài duōshao qián? Wǒ tīngshuō Niūyuēshì de dōngxi dōu hěn guì. 你计划在纽约市住多少天? 你要带多少钱? 我听说纽约的东西都很贵。

COMMUNICATION EXERCISES

Exercise 1

Interpretation Exercises

(You have been notified by the Administration Office that your friend, whom you have not seen for three years, has just called from Monterey Airport. He/she has only a few hours of free time before the next flight to San Francisco. Two students will alternate as speakers while another interprets. Change partners and interpreter every four exchanges. (Here is your conversation over the telephone.)

You: Nǐ hǎo, hěnjiǔ méijiàn le.

Friend: Shì a! Yǐjīng sānnián le. Nǐ hǎo ba?

You: Hěn hǎo, xièxie. Nǐ zěnmē zhīdao wǒ zài zhèlǐ?

Friend: Nǐ fùqīn gàosong wǒ nǐ zài zhèlǐ xué Zhōngwén. Nǐ hěn máng ba?

You: Bú tài máng. Wǒ xiànzài lái fēijīchǎng jiē nǐ. Nǐ búyào zǒu. Wǒmen kéyǐ zài nàge dàlóu (building) qiántou jiàn.

Friend: Hǎo, xièxie. Wǒmen zài dàlóu (building) qiántou jiàn.

(Twenty minutes later at the airport)

You: A! Nǐ hǎo?

Friend: Hǎo, xièxie nǐ. Nǐ hǎo.

You: Yīnwèi nǐde shíhou búgòu, wǒ jiù néng dài nǐ dào jǐge dìfāng (place) qù kànkan. Wǒmen xiànzài qù, hǎo bùhǎo?

Friend: Hǎojǐle. Nǐ tài kèqi. Wǒmen zǒu ba.

(Driving along the Coast)

You: Nǐ zhècì dào Jiùjīnshān qù yǒu shénme shìqíng ma?

Friend: Wǒ qù kāihuì. Wǒ xiǎng qù kāihuì de yǒu hǎojǐge* shì nǐde péngyou.

You: Zhècì kāihuì yǒu shénme yàoqǐn de shì ma?

Friend: Yǒu. Wǒmen jīhuà dào Zhōngguó qù kāi yíge diànlǐ zhǎnlǎnhuì. Tīngshuō Zhōngguó xūyào diànlǐ, wǒmen yǒu hěnduō hǎo diànlǐ kéyǐ mǎigǎi Zhōngguó.

* Hǎojǐge 好几个 M: several

Exercise 3

What Do You Say?

1. Someone offers to help you with something. You tell him you can handle it by yourself, and soften your reply by telling him that he need not be too polite.
2. You are asked where you are going. You say you are going to the airport to meet and pick up your wife who is coming from New York by plane. You are going by car.
3. An acquaintance asks you when the electrical equipment exhibition starts. Tell him it hasn't started yet, and it doesn't start until this afternoon. To go there now would be useless.
(b)
4. Someone asks the purpose of your coming. Tell him you have come to attend a meeting and also to visit your parents who live here. The meeting will last for three days.
5. A visitor wants to talk with you. Tell him you are busy right now; you have several things you must do. Invite him to lunch next Thursday to chat about it.
6. You are asked when you arrived here. Say you came from Beijing the day before yesterday, and you are leaving here the day after tomorrow for New York to attend a meeting.
7. You tell someone you have to go now. There are a number of things you have to buy to take with you to New York. They are gifts for friends.
8. You are asked about someone. Say the person has left already, but you don't know where he went; he didn't tell you. Say his things are still here.
9. You meet two friends at the airport. Ask them "Didn't you bring the children?" They reply in the negative. Ask where the children are. "Are they at home or staying with friends?"
10. You are asked where is so and so. Say you haven't seen him today; he hasn't come yet. Yesterday he told you he had a lot of things to do today.
11. You are asked where you are going. Say you are taking a friend's children to the North Sea Park. Ask the individual if he would like to go along.
12. Ask someone how many Chinese restaurants there are on this street. Say a friend has asked you to a meal, but you don't know at which restaurant.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

A. Chinese-English: Cover the Pinyin text below. Teacher: Randomly select sentences and read each one twice, with a short pause between readings. Students: Say aloud the English equivalent. (translate)

1. Qiántiān Zhāng Tóngzhì cóng Běijīng lái. Tā shì yíge rén lái de, méi dài àiren gēn xiǎoháizi, búguò, tāmen jìhuà míngtiān lái.
2. Hòutiān wǒmen zhèr yào kāihuì, yǒu hěnduō rén yào lái; dōu zhùzài fàndiànli. Qǐng nǐ dào fēijīchǎng qù jiē tāmen, nǐ kéyì kāi wǒde qìchē qù.
3. Wǒ hái méi chī zǎofàn ne, wǒ jīntiān tài máng, shìqing zhēn duō. Nǐ míngtiān lái hǎo bùhǎo? Wǒmen míngtiān kéyì yìkuàir chī wǎnfàn.
4. Zuótiān yǒu yíge péngyou lái. Wǒmen zài yìkuàir chīde wǎnfàn, yě tánle hěnduō shìqing. Tā búzhǐ shì lái kàn wǒ de, tā yě lái kàn wǒ mèimei.
5. Wǒ xiànzài yǒushì, hěn máng, nǐ kéyì bùkeyì xiàwǔ lái? Xiàwǔ wǒ méishì, wǒmen kéyì, tántan.
6. Wǒ xiǎng xià xīngqīwǔ qǐng jìge péngyou lái chī wǎnfàn, nǐ néng bùnéng lái? Wǒmen xiàn zài jiāli hē jǐping jiǔ zài dào fànguǎnr qù chīfàn.
7. Wǒ jīntiān méiqù, wǒ yě bùxiǎng qù. Wǒ hái méi qián, suóyì bùnéng mǎi dōngxì.
8. Wǒ mǔqīn xiàxīngqī lái. Xià xīngqī wǒ yào dào fēijīchǎng qù jiē tā, nǐ hé wǒ yìkuàir qù hǎo bùhǎo?
9. Nǐ búbi jīntiān qù, tā jīntiān bùlái, tā shuō tā míngtiān cái* lái. Wǒ jìhuà dào fēijīchǎng qù jiē tā.
10. Zhèijiàn shìqing wǒ zìjǐ néng bàn, nǐ búbi hé wǒ yìkuàir qù. Búbi kèqǐ.
11. Nǐ xiànzài yǒushì ma? Wǒmen yìkuàir qù chī wǎnfàn qù, hǎo bùhǎo? Zhèitiáo jiē yǒu liǎng-sānjiā hěn hǎo de fànguǎnr.
12. Wǒ hái méi chī zǎofàn ne. Wǒ jīntiān hěn máng, shìqing hěnduō. Nǐ zìjǐ qù ba.
13. Zhǎnlǎnhuì hái méikāishǐ ne, míngtiān cái* kāishǐ. Kāi liǎngge xīngqī.
14. Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yíge dēng, zhèjiā diànr qì shāngdiàn hěn dà, wǒ xiǎng tāmen zhèr yǒu. Búzhīdào guì búguì.

*cái 才 Adv: (Used between a time word and a verb to stress that the action will not take place until the time indicated.)

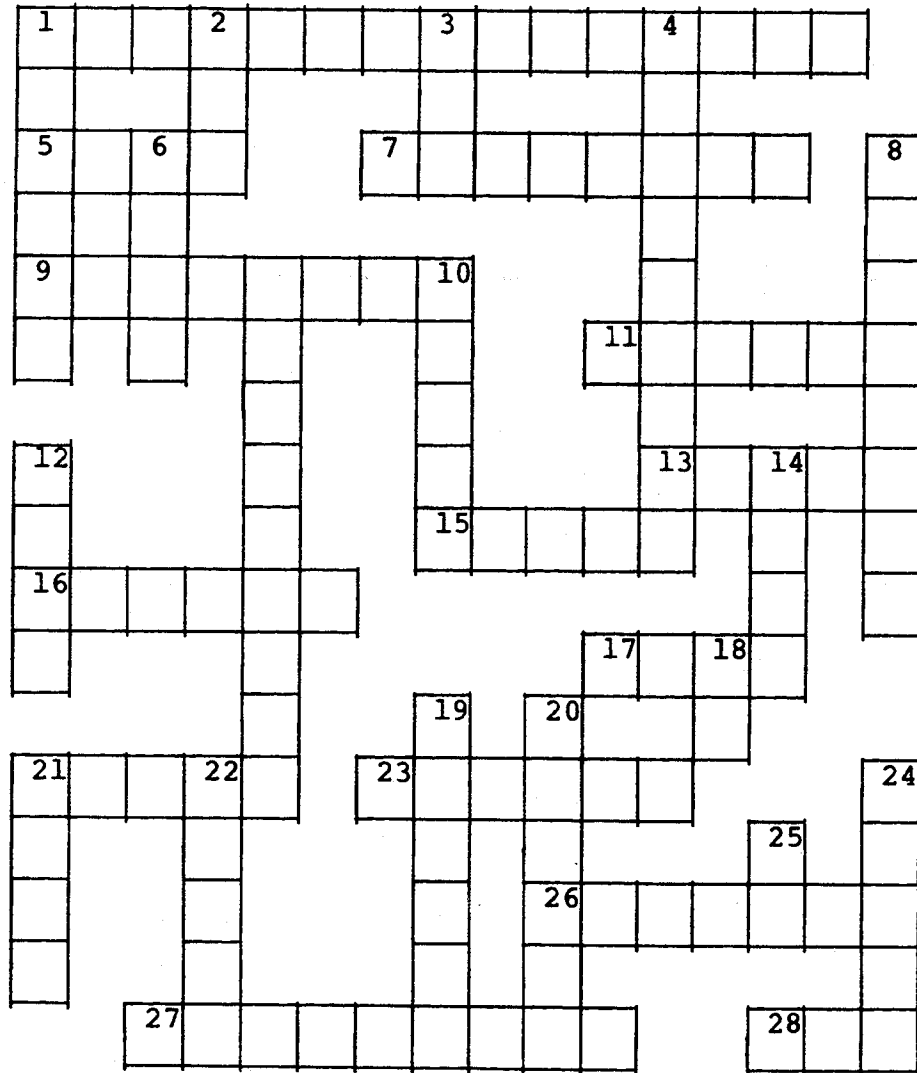
B. Chinese-English: Fluency Exercises. Student: Read aloud the sentences below (as selected by the teacher), concentrating on fluency, pronunciation and tones. Then give your instructor the English equivalent for each sentence.

1. Shàng xīngqiliù wǒ méishì, suóyì wǒ dào Běihǎi-Gōngyuán qùle. Wǒ búshì zìjǐ yíge rén qù de, wǒ yě dài háizi qùle.
2. Xiàxīngqī wǒ nǚpéngyou yào cóng Niǔyuē lái. Tā zuò fēijī lái, xiàwǔ lái, wǒ bìděi dào fēijīchǎng qù jiē tā.
3. Duìbuqǐ, wǒ jīntiān yǒu yíjiàn bìděi bàn de shìqing, wǒ hěn máng. Wǒmen hòutiān zhōngwǔ yíkuàir chí wǔfàn, hǎo bùhǎo?
4. Wǒmen zhèr zhèige xīngqī kāihuì, kěshì xiànzài hái méikāishì ne. Míngtiān xiàwǔ kāishì, nǐ míngtiān lái ba.
5. Zhǎnlǎnhuì búzài zhèr, zài Běihǎi-Gōngyuán. Nǐ zhīdao zěn-me qù ma? Wǒ xiànzài yǒushì, hěn máng, suóyì bùnéng gēn nǐ qù. Wǒ xiǎng míngtiān qù.
6. Jīntiān shìqing hěn duō. Yǒu péngyou qǐng wǒ chí wǎnfàn. Wǒ yīnwei hěn máng, wǔfàn hái méichí ne. Wǒmen xiànzài yíkuàir qù chí, hǎo bùhǎo?
7. Wǒ méiyǒu hēnduō qián, wǒ zhèr cái yǒu wǔmáoqián. Wǒmen mǎi yíping qìshuǐ hē, hǎo bùhǎo? Nǐ hē yíbàn, wǒ hē yíbàn.
8. Jīntiān xiàwǔ wǒ děi dào fēijīchǎng qù jiē wǒ tàitai qù. Tā méidài háizi lái yīnwei tāmen tài xiǎo, tāmen zài péngyou jiā ne.
9. Nǐ búbì gěi qián, búbì kèqì. Jīntiān shì wǒ qǐng nǐ chīfàn, míngtiān nǐ kényì qǐng wǒ, hǎo bùhǎo? Míngtiān wǒmen qù chí Zhōngcān, hǎo bùhǎo?
10. Wǒ nǚpéngyǒu yíjīng lái le, tā shì qiántiān lái de, zuò fēijī lái de. Wǒ méidào fēijīchǎng qù jiē tā, yīnwei wǒ tài máng.
11. Nǐ nèi jìgè péngyou zǒu ma? Nǐ búshì gào song wǒ tāmen jīntiān zǒu ma? Tāmen shì zuò fēijī lái shì zuò huǒchē?
12. Wǒ xiǎng dào diànqì zhǎnlǎnhuì qù kànkan, búguo wǒ jīntiān tài máng, shìqing hěn duō, dōu děi wǒ zìjǐ bàn. Wǒ míngtiān hé nǐ yíkuàir qù, hǎo bùhǎo?
13. Hǎojíle. Jīntiān wǒ méishì, wǒmen xiàwǔ dào Běihǎi-Gōngyuán qù, wǒ yě dài wǒ nǚpéngyou qù. Nǐ kényì bùkényì dài jìping jiǔ? Wǒ xiànzài méi qián.
14. Tā lái le, tā shì qiántiān lái de. Tā méi dài tàitai lái, tā shuō tā tàitai xiànzài hěn máng, shìqing hěn duō, tā xiàxīngqī lái.

C. English-Chinese: Teacher: Randomly assign sentences to each student. Student: First read the sentence carefully, then translate into Chinese. Concentrate on word-order, fluency, tones and pronunciation.

1. Comrade Zhāng hasn't come yet. He's coming next week. I think he's coming on Thursday afternoon. I hear he's coming by plane.
2. I can't do this (affair) by myself, it is a lot of trouble. Can you do it together with me? I've already worked [on it] for half a day.
3. I'm sorry, he's busy now; he cannot see you now. He says for you to come tomorrow morning; at that time he won't be doing anything.
4. Which day does the exhibition begin? Do you know? Is it today or tomorrow? Today my friend has invited me to a meal, so I cannot go.
5. My friend came yesterday from Běijīng by plane. He came by way of Hongkong. He has a lot of friends in Hongkong. He stayed there five days.
6. I invited him to lunch today. However, there are five Chinese restaurants here altogether. I didn't tell him which restaurant we would go to.
7. The day after tomorrow I am going by plane to Guǎngzhōu by way of Hongkong. I hear that the airport there is very large.
8. The electronic equipment exhibition begins the day after tomorrow in Běijīng. I would like to go, but I don't have any money just now.
9. There are two Chinese restaurants on this street. One is very large, but the food is not too good. The other is small, and the food is excellent.
10. I'm very busy this week. Every day I have a lot of things that I must do. However, next week I've nothing do (no affairs), so come next week, okay?
11. He invited me to a meal tomorrow, but his apartment is very small, so he said he would take me to a restaurant. He didn't say which restaurant.
12. My father has already come; he came yesterday. However, my mother hasn't come yet. She's coming next week; she's also bringing my younger brother.

ENRICHMENT



ACROSS

1. well-known park in Beijing
5. opposite of rude
7. on the street
9. TW (day)
11. Sleep on the _____.
13. must
15. young lady
16. Can you _____ it?
17. QW
21. suffix for public buildings
23. Tā _____ láile.
25. QW
27. TW (week)
28. number

DOWN

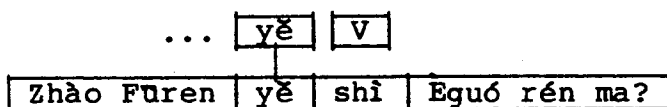
1. rude
2. had a _____ at 9
3. like English indirect object
4. write with
6. number
8. extremely busy
10. you
12. _____ do that
14. brother
18. particle
19. TW
20. instrument
21. brother
22. that time
24. _____ board
25. amoré

MODULE GRAMMAR SUMMARY

A. Abbreviated questions:

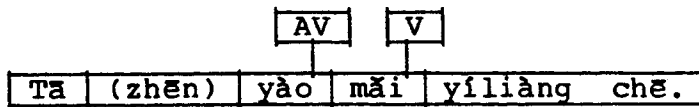
1. Zhāng Xiǎojie xiànzài zài Shànghǎi. Nǐ tàitai ne?
2. Wǒ àiren jiào Sòng Zīyàn. Nǐ àiren ne?
3. Wǒ shì Jiānádà rén. Nǐ ne?
4. Zhōu Mǐnzhēnde lǎojiā zài Nánjīng. Nǐ lǎojiā ne?

After a statement, an abbreviated question can be formed with ne. It has the equivalent of the English "What about...?"

B. Adverb (A)yě:

1. Tā àiren yě búzài Zhōngguó ma?
2. Nǐ tàitai yě jiào Měilíng ma?
3. Shì, tāmen lǎojiā yě zài Zhōngguó Shāndōng.
4. Tā xiānsheng yě búzài Měiguó.

The adverb yě, "also," always comes before the verb. In negative sentences (such as 1 and 4), it can be translated as "either."

C. Auxiliary verb (AV) and Verb (V):

1. Wǒ hěn xiǎng mǎi zhèizhī yuánzhūbī.
2. Tā zhēn ài kàn Měiguó bào.

3. Fāng Bǎolán búbì zuò zhōngfàn.
4. Hú Guóquán bùyào yòng fànwǎn.
5. Tā hěn huì zuò Zhōngguó fàn.

D. Choice-Type Questions: Positive and negative form of the same verb.

S		V*		bu+V	...
Huáng Tóngzhì	shì	búshì	Fàguó rén?		

1. Huáng Xiáojie zài nǎr? Tā zài Déguó búzài?
2. Niūyuēshì zài búzài Niūyuēzhōu?
3. Qīngwèn, Tā shì búshì Sīmǎ Xiānsheng?
4. Nímende Yuènnán xiānsheng hǎo buhǎo?
5. Lǐ Tóngzhì, nǐ àiren shì búshì Huáng Yùzhēn?

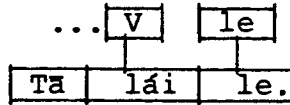
The above-choice type questions permit positive or negative answers. The marker ma is not used; V* can be any type of verb (EV, SV, V, etc.) except xìng or jiào.

E. Choice type Questions with háishi:

V*	háishi		V
Tā jiào	Tíngfēng	háishi	jiào	Chéng?	

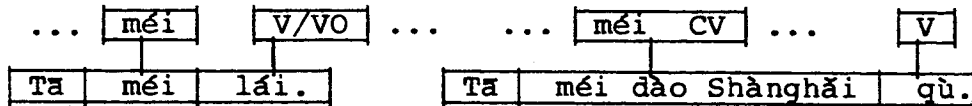
1. Nǐ shì Táng Měilì Tàitai háishi Fāng Měilíng Xiáojie?
2. Tā zài Měiguó Dézhōu háishi zài Jiānádà Àndàlùè?
3. Tā xiānsheng jiào Yōngpíng háishi (jiào) Shìyǐng?
4. Tāmen lǎojiā zài Běijīng háishi zài Shànghǎi?
5. Nín guìxíng? Nín xìng Hú háishi xìng Wú?

V* can be any type of verb.

F. Completed Action:a. with le

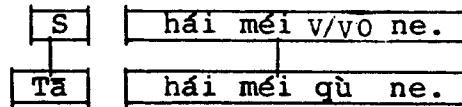
1. Tā mǎile yīshuāng bùxié.
2. Tā huàle sīzhāng shānshuǐhuà.
3. Tā màile hěn duō dōngxi.
4. Fāng Xiānsheng yǐjīng qùle.
5. Tā dào Dézhōu qùle.

b. Negation of Completed Action



1. Tā méichīfàn.
2. Tā méi cóng Shànghǎi lái.
3. Lǐ Xiānsheng méiqù.
4. Tā méizài yóujú gōngzuò.
5. Tā méi xiězì.

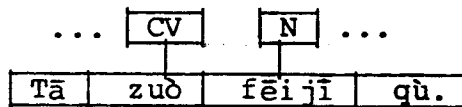
c. Action Still not Completed



1. Tā hái méichī fàn ne.
2. Tā hái méidào Běijīng qù ne.
3. Tā hái méixué xiězì ne.

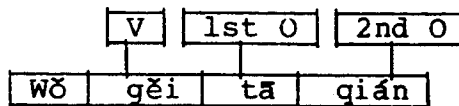
4. Nèiběn shū hái méichūbǎn ne.
5. Wǒ hái méixué fàntīzi ne.

G. Co-Verb Construction:



1. Tā yòng kuàizi chīfàn.
2. Tā zuò huǒchē dào Táizhōng qù.
3. Tā cóng yóujú dào fànguǎnr qù.
4. Wǒ gēn tā yīkuàir qù.
5. Wǒ duì tā shuōhuà.

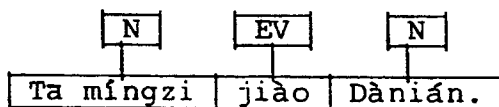
H. Double Objects:



1. Tā gěi wǒ yìběn shū.
2. Wǒ jiào tā Lǐ Xiānsheng.
3. Tāmen bùgěi wǒ qián.

In this type of structure, the first object in English would be called the indirect object and the second object called the direct object.

I. Equative Verbs (EV): shì, xìng, jiào



1. Tā xìng Mǎ. Tā míngzi jiào Mínglǐ ma? Tā shì Mǎ Mínglǐ ma?
2. Zhào Wǎnrú búshì zhèrde rén, tā shì nàrde rén.
3. Qǐngwèn, Bǎolán xìng shénme? Tā búxìng Fāng ma?
4. Tā àiren búxìng Zhāng. Tā xìng Jiāng.
5. Máo Bǎolán de xiānsheng jiào shénme míngzi?

The equative verbs shì, xìng, and jiào act as equal signs (=) between nouns (N), pronouns (PN), or noun phrases (NP).

J. Indicating Possession with -de:

...	N + de	person/thing possessed
Sūn Zhènhande	tàitai	bújiào Měilíng.

1. Gāo Xiùfèngde xiānsheng shì Táiběi rén.
2. Lǐ Xiáojiède míngzi jiào Bīngyíng.
3. Zhōu Qiǎoyúnde lǎojiā zài buzài Fàguó?
4. Nǐ shì nǎrde rén? Nǐ shì zhèrde rén ma?
5. Liáng Déxiánde tàitai zài zhèr háishi zài nàr?
6. Chéngwàitou de xuéxiào shì wǒmende xuéxiào.

K. Indicating possession without -de:

PN	person/thing possessed
Nǐ	lǎojiā zài buzài Měiguó?

- Wǒ tàitai shì Yīngguó rén.
- Tā xiānsheng míngzi jiào Guóquán ma?
- Tāmen lǎojiā zài Zhōngguó Shāndōng buzài?

When a close relationship exists between the possessor and the possessed (as with xiānsheng, tàitai, àiren, lǎojiā, etc.) the marker -de is not used. However, if the possessor contains more than one word, -de is often attached to the last word of the possessor. (See J, above, sentences 1, 3, and 5.)

L. Modification of Nouns by Clauses (with -de):

Modifying clause	<u>de</u>	noun
------------------	-----------	------

1. Yīngguó zuò de zhuōzi
2. yòng kuàizi de rén
3. xiězì de nèige xuésheng

In certain frequently used expressions where the noun modified is understood, the modifying clause plus -de will itself become a noun.

4. Mài**bàode**

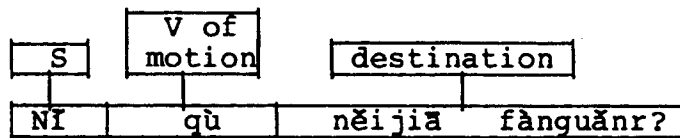
M. Movement Patterns:

a. For a Purpose:

S	(V of motion)	pur- pose	V of motion
Wǒmen	(qù)	chífàn	qù.

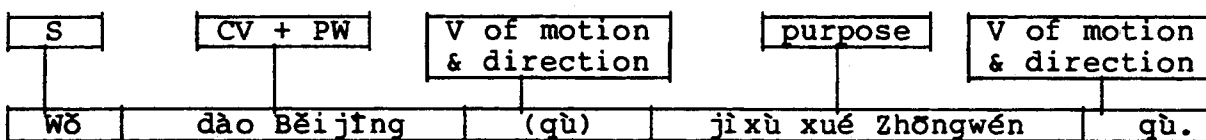
1. Wǒ dào xuéxiào kànshū qù.
2. Tā dào fànquǎnr qù gōngzuò qù.
3. Tā yào dào Fàguó qù hē Fàguó jiǔ qù.

b. To a Destination:



1. Wǒ lái chénglǐtōu.
2. Tā qù nàige xuéxiào.

c. With the CO-Verb of Movement and Direction:



1. Tā cóng Měiguó dào Déguó qù.
2. Wǒ zuò huǒchē cóng Táizhōng lái.
3. Tā cóng Měiguó lái xué Déwén lái.

N. Positional Noun Endings: -lǐ(tou), -wài(tou), -xià(tou), -shàng(tou).

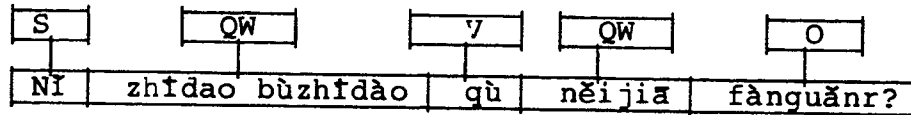
1. Tā zhùzài chéngwài(tou).
2. Fàndiàn(lǐ) yǒu hěn duō rén.
3. Shūshàng(tou) yǒu tāde míngzi.

Positional nouns: lǐtōu, wàitōu, xiàtōu, shàngtōu, hòutōu, qiántōu.

1. Tā zhùzài fàndiàn hòutōu.
2. Tā péngyou zhùzài xuéxiào qiántōu.
3. Hòutōu de nàige fàndiàn
4. Qiántōu de xuéxiào

Whether they are positional noun endings, positional nouns, or nouns made from a combination of nouns and positional noun endings, their function is basically the same: to localize.

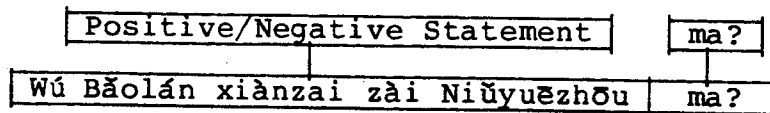
O. Question Inside a Question:



1. Nǐ zhīdao tā shì nǚguó rén ma?
2. Nǐ zhīdao tā chī shénme ma?
3. Nǐ zhīdao bùzhīdao tā zhùzài nǎr?

While one of the question elements will be a QW, the second can be an element such as choice type or the use of ma; i.e., it can vary.

P. Questions with ma:



1. Lǐ Xiānshengde tàitai bújiào Qiǎoyún ma?
2. Nǐmende Fàguó xiānsheng bùhǎo ma?
3. Liú Zhīyuǎn búzài Hánguó ma?
4. Táng Yǒngpíng búshì Shànghǎi rén ma?
5. Qīngwèn, Qīngdǎo zài nǎr? Zài Shāndōng ma?

To form yes/no questions, add ma to the end of positive or negative statements.

Q. Questions with shéi, shénme, nǚguó, nǎrde, and nǎr:

- | <u>Question</u> | <u>Answer</u> |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. <u>Shéi</u> shì Hú Měilíng? | <u>Wǒ</u> shì Hú Měilíng. |

- | | |
|---|------------------------------|
| 2. <u>Shéi</u> jiào Mǎ Mínglǐ? | <u>Wǒ</u> jiào Mǎ Mínglǐ. |
| 3. Tā shì <u>shéi</u> ? | Tā shì <u>Wǒ xiānsheng</u> . |
| 4. Nǐ xìng <u>shénme</u> ? | Wǒ xìng <u>Mǎdīng</u> . |
| 5. Wáng Tàitai jiào <u>shénme</u> míngzi? | Tā jiào <u>Měilì</u> . |
| 6. Nǐ shì <u>něiguó</u> rén? | Wǒ shì <u>Fàguó</u> rén. |
| 7. Tā àiren shì <u>nǎrde</u> rén? | Tā shì <u>Jiāzhōu</u> rén. |

Though the QW changes to a noun or pronoun in the answer, the word order remains the same.

R. Shì...de Construction:

N	shì	where/when	V-de
Nǐ	shì	zài nǎr	shēng de?

1. Wǒ shì zài Měiguó shēng de. (where)
2. Wǒ shì cóng zhōngguó lái de. (where)
3. Wǒ shì zuò huǒchē qù de. (how)
4. Tā shì zài něinián shēng de? (when)
5. Tā shì lái zì mǎimài de. (why)

The shì...de construction is used here to stress various circumstances connected with the action of the verb (Here it answers the questions of where and when). This construction can also be used to focus attention on where, how, and why.

S. Stative Verbs: hǎo, etc.

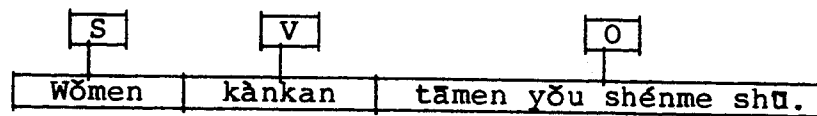
S	SV
Wǒ	hǎo, xièxie.

1. Nǐmen hǎo ma? Wǒmen hǎo, xièxie. Nǐ ne?

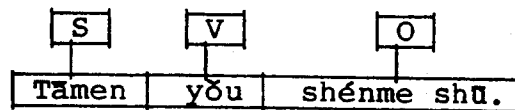
2. Měilíng xiànzài hǎo ma? Bǎolán ne?
3. Zhèizhāng zhuōzi hěn guī.
4. Zhèijiàn shì hěn máfan.

In general, stative verbs are equivalent to the English "to be + adjective."

T. Subject-Verb-Object Pattern:

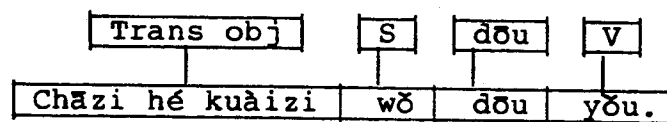


also



1. Wǒ kàn Měiguó bào.
2. Tā zuò Zhōngguó fàn.
3. Wǒ yǒu hěn duō shū.

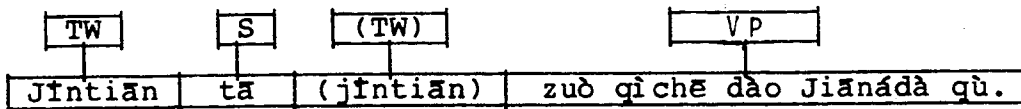
U. Transposed Objects:



1. Shū, bào wǒ dōu kàn.
2. Yīngwén, Zhōngwén tāmen dōu xué.
3. Zhōngcān, Xīcān wǒ xiǎng dōu hěn hǎo.
4. Dēng, shūzhuōzi, wǒ dōu dǎi mǎi.

In this type of sentence, the dōu refers to the transposed objects.

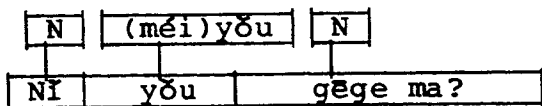
V. Time When Construction:



1. Hòutiān wǒ dào chéngwàitōu qù.
2. Tā míngtiān lái xuéxiào.
3. Míngtiān wǒ yào mài wǒde qìchē.
4. Jīntiān tā yào chī Zhōngguó fàn.

Note: The time word comes before the main verb, and either before or after the subject.

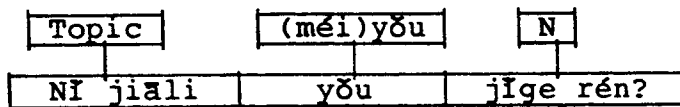
W. a. Yǒu Indicating Possession (to have):



1. Nǐ yǒu hái zi ma?
2. Wǒmen yǒu liǎngge hái zi.
3. Wǒ méiyǒu gēge.
4. Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu dì di.

Yǒu in these sentences shows the function of possession.

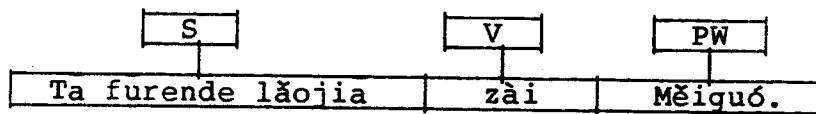
b. Impersonal use of yǒu:



1. Nǐ jiāli yǒu shénme rén?
2. Yǒu wǒ gēn wǒ tàitai.
3. Chéngli yǒu méiyǒu xuéxiào?

Yǒu in these sentences has an impersonal usage and is usually translated as "there is/are."

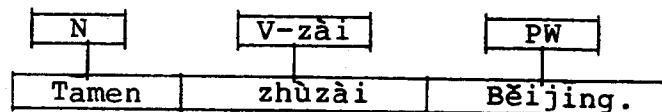
X. a. Zài as main verb: Subject - Verb - Place Word



1. Lǐ Tóngzhīde àiren xiànzài búzài Dézhōu, zài Jiāzhōu.
2. Mǎ Tàitai, nǐ xiānsheng lǎojiā zài nǎr?
3. Tāmen búzài zhèr. Tā zài Yuènnán. Tā àiren zài Rìběn.
4. Āndàlùe búzài Zhōngguó, zài Jiānádà.

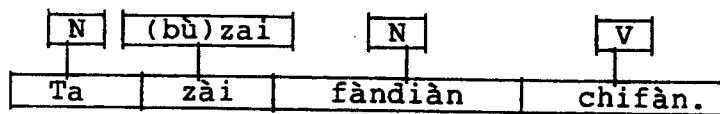
When zài is used as the main verb (V), it is equivalent to the English "to be in/on/at," and indicates that the place word tells the subject's location.

b. Zài as a Verb Suffix:



1. Nǐ zhùzài xuéxiào qiántou ma?
 2. Zhèige xuésheng zhùzài tā péngyou jiā.
 3. Tā péngyou zhùzài chéngwàitōu.
- When zài is used as a verbal suffix, it connects the action to the place.

c. Zài Used as a CV to Set Up the Main Action:

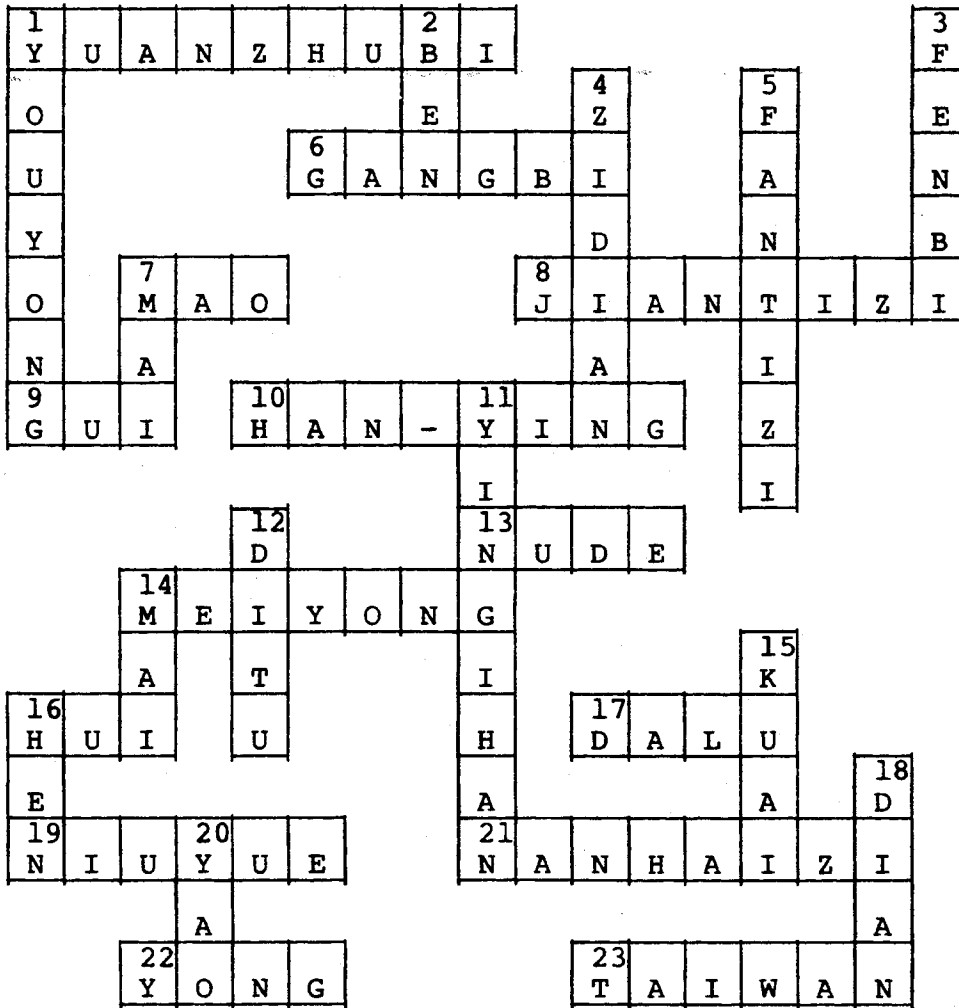


1. Wǒ gēge zài chénglǐtōu shàngxué.
 2. Tāmen búzài nèige fàndiànli chifàn.
 3. Wǒ péngyou zài yóujú gongzuò.
 4. Tā zài nèige xuéxiào xuéxí.
- The CV zài is used here to tell where the main action takes place.

KEYS TO ENRICHMENT

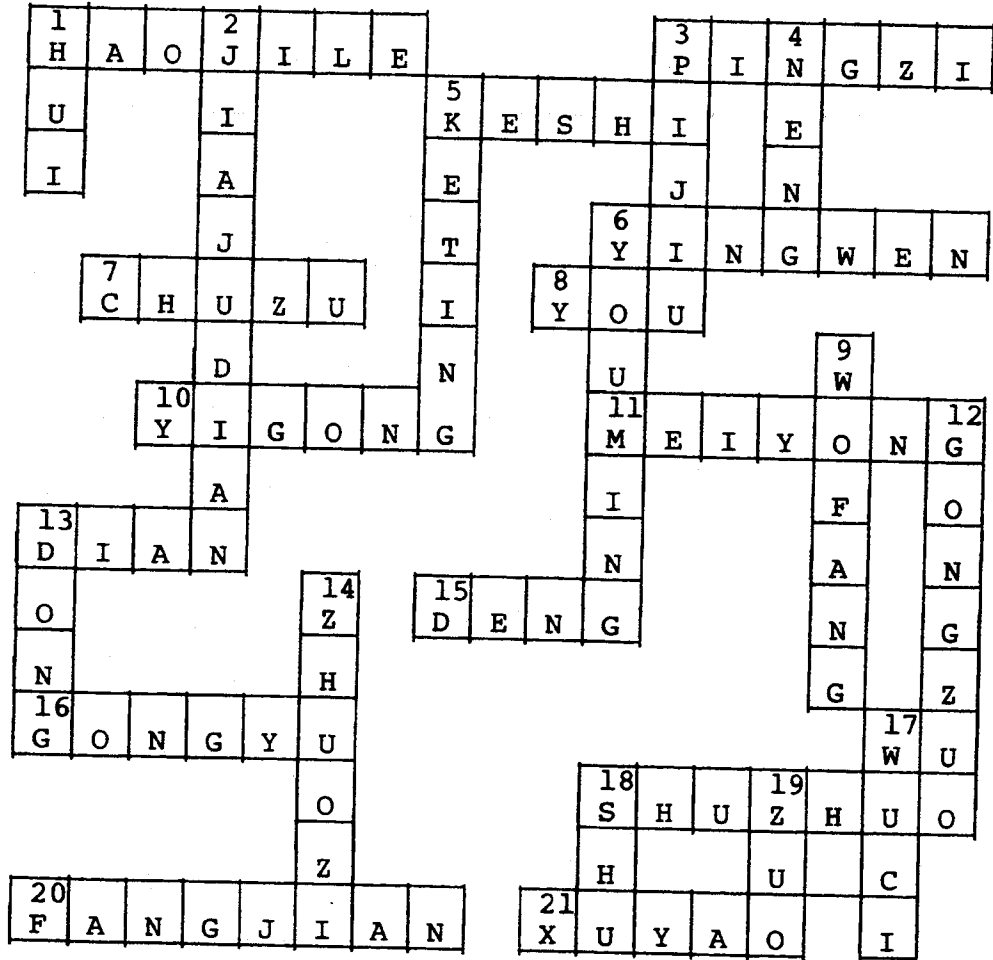
SOLUTIONS TO CROSSWORD PUZZLES

Lesson 7



SOLUTIONS TO CROSSWORD PUZZLES

Lesson 10



SOLUTIONS TO CROSSWORD PUZZLES

Lesson 11

1	S	H	I	2	H	O	U			3	C		4	J			5	F				
H				U				6	S	H	O	U	Q	I	A	N	D	E				
A				O				H		N			N					I				
N				7	C	H	U	A	N	G			G					J				
G				H				N					G					I				
8	W	O	9	M	E	N		G					U			10	J					
U			I					C				11	Z	U	O	T	I	A	N			
			N					I				A					N					
			G							12	Z	I	13	J	I		N		14	D		
			15	T	O	N	G	16	Z	H	I		I				I		I			
			I					H					H			17	N	A	M	E		
18	X	I	A	G	E	Y	U	E				U				N				R		
			N					Z			19	X	I	A	N	20					B	
								A			I				A						E	
21	D	I	L	I	U	T	I	A	N				22	E	R				23	T	A	N

SOLUTIONS TO CROSSWORD PUZZLES

Lesson 12

1	B	E	I	2	H	A	I	-	3	G	O	N	G	4	Y	U	A	N					
U			U						E					U									
5	K	E	6	Q	I				7	J	I	E	S	H	A	N	G	8	M				
E			I											N					A				
9	Q	I	A	N	T	I	A	10	N					Z					N				
I			N		A			I						11	C	H	U	A	N	G			
					N			M						U						J			
12	B				G			E					13	B	I	14	D	E	I				
U					S			15	N	U	S	H	I			I				L			
16	B	A	N	S	H	I														E			
I					A									17	N	A	18	I					
					O			19	X				20	D			E						
21	G	U	A	22	N	R		23	Y	I	J	I	N	G						24	F		
E				E				N						A			25	A		E			
G				I				G						26	N	E	I	N	I	A	N		
E				C				Q						Q							B		
				27	X	I	N	G	Q	I	L	I	U							28	B	A	I

GLOSSARY MODULE 2

a	P: (marker for seeking approval agreement on suggestion)	L8
ài	V/AV: to love, to be fond of/to love to	L9
ba	P: (indicating 'I presume')	L11
-bǎ	M: (generally for chairs or many things with handles)	L10
bān	M/N: class (of students), squad (military unit)	L8
bānzhǎng	N: class or section monitor	L8
bàn	V: to handle, to manage, to attend to, to do	L12
-bàn	NU: (and) half	L10
bàn-	NU: one half of	L10
bànshì	VO: to handle, to manage, or to ...	L12
bào	N: newspaper (M: <u>fèn[r]</u>)	L8
bàoshang	N: in the newspaper	L8
bàozhǐ	N: newspaper	L8
Běihǎi-Gōngyuán	PW: North Sea Public Park	L12
běn	M: volume (of books)	L7
bīděi	AV: must, have to (stronger than <u>děi</u>)	L12
búbì	AV: need not, not have to (not necessary)	L12
bùduō	SV/NU: to be not many or not much	L9
búguò	CNJ: but, however	L12
búkèqǐ	SV/IE: to be impolite, rude/Don't mention it.	L12
bùshǎo	SV/NU: to be quite a few	L9
búyàojiàn	SV/IE: to be unimportant/It doesn't matter.	L8
bùzhǐ	CNJ: not only, not merely, not just	L12
bùxié	N: cotton shoes	L9
cái	ADV: only, merely, just (less than expected)	L10
cài	N: vegetables, (cooked) dishes, course in a banquet	L8
-chǎng	BF: open field, public place	L12
chāzi	N: fork	L8
chē	N: car (used with wheeled vehicle)	L11
chī	V: to eat	L8
chīfàn/chī fàn	VO: to eat (meals/food), to eat cooked rice	L8
chū(bǎn)	V: to publish	L7
chūzū	V: to rent	L10
chúfáng	N: kitchen (M: <u>-jian</u>)	L10
chuán	N: boat, ship (M: <u>sou</u> , <u>tiáo</u>)	L11
chuáng	N: bed (M: <u>-zhang</u>)	L10
-cì	M: (of number of occasions, times, etc.)	L8
cóng	CV: from	L11
cóng...dào	PATT: from ... to	L11

GLOSSARY

MODULE 2

cóng...dào...lái	PT: come to ... from	L11
cóng...dào...qù	PT: go to ... from	L11
cóng...lái	PT: come from ...	L11
cóng...qù	PT: go to ... from ...	L11
dàhòutiān	TW: three days from now (day after day after tomorrow)	L12
dàjiā	N: all, everybody, everyone	L8
dàlù/Dàlù	N: continent, mainland/Mainland China	L7
dàqiántiān	TW: three days ago (day before day before yesterday)	L12
dài	V: to take, to bring, to carry	L12
daochá	N: silverware, cutlery, knives, and forks	L8
daōzi	N: knife	L8
dào	CV/V: to/arrive	L11
dào...lái	PT: come to ...	L11
dào...qù	PT: go to ...	L11
děi	AV: must, ought to, have to	L10
dēng	N: lamp (M: -zhǎn)	L10
dìtú	N: map (M: zhāng)	L7
dì	P: (ordinalizing prefix to numbers)	L11
dìèrtiān	TW: the second day, the next day	L11
dìsānběn	N: the third volume	L11
dìyitian	TW: the first day	L11
diàn	BF: store	L7
diànnqì	N: electrical equipment	L12
diànnqì-zhǎnlǎn(huì)	N: electrical equipment exhibition	L12
dōngxi	N: things (M: jiàn)	L9
Donghǎilóu	N/PW: name of a restaurant (House of the Eastern Sea)	L8
dòng	M: (for houses and buildings)	L10
duìle	IE: That's right. That's correct.	L11
-duō	Nu: plus, and more, over, odd	L12
duō	SV/Nu: to be (too) much or many	L9
duōshǎo	QW/Nu: how many, how much	L7
fántǐzì	N: full-form characters	L7
fàn	N: food, meal, cooked rice	L8
fànguǎnr	N: restaurant	L8
fànshǎo	N: spoon for serving rice	L8
fàntīng	N: dining room (M: -jiàn)	L10
fànwǎn	N: rice bowl	L8
fángjiān	N: room	L10
fēijī	N: airplane (M: jià)	L11
fēijīchǎng	N: airport, airfield	L12
-fēn (qián)	N: cents	L7
fěnbǐ	N: chalk (M: zhi)	L7
-fèn(r)	M: for newspaper (a complete issue)	L8
fúhuāng	N: apparel (clothes, shoes socks, boots, hats, etc.)	L9
fúhuāngdiàn	N: apparel store	L9
fùmǔ	N: parents	L9

GLOSSARY

MODULE 2

gāngbǐ	N: pen, fountain pen (Lit. steel pen) (M: <u>zhǐ</u>)	L7
gàosong/gàosu	V: to tell, to let know	L8
gěi	V: to give	L8
gēn ... yīkuàir	PT: together with	L12
gōngyù	N: apartment, apartment house, room- ing house (M: <u>-dòng</u>)	L10
gōngyuán	N: park	L12
guǎnr-	BF: ending for various public buildings, halls, etc.	L8
guì	SV: to be expensive	L7
hái	A: still, in addition	L10
hái méi...ne	PT: haven't yet ...	L12
Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn	N: Chinese-English dictionary	L7
hǎo a!	IE: That's good! That's O.K.	L8
hǎojíle	IE: extremely good, wonderful	L10
hǎokàn	SV: to be pretty, handsome, good- looking attractive	L9
hē	V: to drink	L9
hējiǔ	VO: to drink (alcoholic beverages)	L9
hēshuǐ	VO: to drink water	L9
hé	C: and	L7
hòutiān	TW: day after tomorrow	L12
hòutiān jiàn	IE: See you day after tomorrow.	L12
huà	N: speech, language	L8
huà	V: to paint, to draw (picture)	L9
huàhuàr	VO: to paint pictures	L9
huàr	N: picture, painting (M: <u>zhang</u>)	L9
huì	N: meeting, conference, convention, gathering, party	L12
huì	AV: can (know how to)	L7
huǒchē	N: train	L11
jǐ	NU: a few, some, several	L7
-jíle	BF: extremely	L10
jìhuà	N/V: a plan/to plan	L11
jìxù	AV: continue to	L11
jiā	M: (for hotels, restaurants, shops, etc.)	L7
jiājù	N: furniture (M: <u>jiàn</u> , <u>tào</u>)	L10
jiājùdiàn	N: furniture store (M: <u>jiā</u>)	L10
jiān	M: (for rooms)	L10
jiǎntǐzì	N: short-form (simplified) characters	L7
jiàn	M: a piece of, a matter of	L9
jiàn	V: to see, to meet (with) (more formal than <u>kàn</u>)	L12
jiāogěi	V: to hand over to, to give to	L8
jiē	V: to meet and pick up someone (at airport, train station, etc.)	L12
jiē	N: street (M: <u>-tiáo</u>)	L12
jiēshàng	N: on the street	L12
jīnnián	TW: this year	L11
jīntiān	TW: today	L11

GLOSSARY

MODULE 2

jīng(guó)	CV/V: by way of, go through, via	L11
jiǔ	N: alcoholic beverages	L9
jiù	SV: to be old, to be used (opposite of <u>xin</u>)	L10
jiù	A: just, only	L12
jiùshi	A-EV: exactly, precisely (used for emphasis)	L8
kāi qìche	VO: to drive a car	L11
kāihuì	VO/V: to hold a meeting, to attend a meeting	L12
kāishǐ	V: to start, to begin	L12
kànjiàn	V: to see, to perceive	L12
keyi	AV: can (permissible), O.K.	L8
kěshi	MA: but, however	L9
kèqì	SV/IE: to be polite, courteous	L12
kètīng	N: parlor, living room (M: <u>-jian</u>)	L10
-kuàiqián	N: dollars	
kuàizi	N: chopsticks (M: <u>shuang</u>)	
lái	V: to come, to come to	L10
lǎoshī	N: teacher	L8
-le	P: (marker of completed action)	L12
líkai	V: leave	L11
máfan	SV/V/N: to be troublesome/to trouble, to bother/trouble	L9
mǎi	V: to buy	L7
mǎimai	N: business	L9
mài	V: to sell, to sell for	L7
màigěi	V: to sell to ...	L8
máng	SV: to be busy, to be in a hurry	L12
-máo (qián)	N: dimes	L7
máobǐ	N: (Chinese) brush pen (M: <u>zhi</u>)	L7
méi-	PT: (marker of negative or completed action)	L12
méi(yǒu)shì	IE/VO: to be free (not busy)	L12
méiyòng	SV: to be useless	L7
měi	SP: each, every	L8
měige	SP-M: each one	L8
měirén	N: each person, everyone	L8
měitiān	SP-M: every day	L8
měiwèi	SP-M: each person (polite form. <u>-wèi</u> polite measure for individuals)	L8
míngnián	TW: next year	L11
míngtiān	TW: tomorrow	L11
nàme	IE/A: thus, then, in such a way/in such way, in that way	L11
něici	PH: Which time?	L8
nèici	PH: that time	L8
nèixiē	SP-NU: those	L10
néng	AV: can, be capable of	L9
nǐmen dàjiā	N: all of you	L8
ò	EX: Oh!	L8

GLOSSARY

MODULE 2

píjiǔ	N: beer	L9
píxié	N: leather shoes	L9
piányi	SV: to be inexpensive	L7
píng	N: bottle(s) of ...	L9
píngzi	M: bottle	L9
pù	BF/N: shop/store	L9
pùzi	N: store, shop	L9
qìchē	N: automobile (M: <u>bù</u> , <u>liàng</u>)	L11
qìshuǐ	N: soda, soft-drink	L9
qiānbǐ	N: lead pencil (M: <u>zhì</u>)	L7
qiántiān	TW: day before yesterday	L12
qián	N: money	L7
qǐng zuò	IE: Please sit down.	L11
qù	V: to go, to go to	L8
qùnián	TW: last year	L11
sān-sīyuè	TW: March or April	L11
shān	N: mountain, hill	L9
shanshuǐ	N: mountains and water, scenery	L9
shanshuǐhuà	N: landscape (painting)	L9
shāngdiàn	N: store, shop (M: <u>jià</u>)	L9
shàngcǐ	N: last time	L10
shàng(ge)xīngqiwǔ	TW: Friday of last week	L12
shànggēyuè	TW: last month	L10
shàngwǔ	TW: forenoon	L11
sháo	N: spoon	L8
shǎo	SV/NU: to be few or little in quantity	L9
shíhou	N: time	L11
shípǔ/càipǔ	N: cookbook (recipes book)	L9
shì(qíng)	N: affair, matter, thing, business (M: <u>jiàn</u>)	L12
shōu	V: to collect, to receive, to accept	L10
shōuqián	VO: to collect money	L10
shōuqiándē	N: cashier	L10
shūdiàn	N: bookstore (M: <u>jià</u>)	L7
shūjiàzi	N: bookshelf	L10
shūpù	N: bookstore, bookshop	L9
shūzhuō(r)	N: desk (M: <u>-zhāng</u>)	L10
shuāng	M: (a) pair of	L9
shuǐ	N: water	L9
shuō	V: to speak, to talk, to say	L8
shuōhuà	VO: to speak, to talk, to say	L8
sìgē cài	N: four-course meal, four dishes	L8
sòng	V: to present (a gift), to give (a gift)	L9
sònggei	V: to present to, to give to	L9
suàn	V: to consider, to calculate, to figure out	L10
suóyī	MA: so, therefore, as a result	L12
tāmen dàjiā	N: all of them	L8
Táiwān	N: Taiwan (Formosa)	L7
tán	V: to chat, to converse, to talk	L11
tāng	N: soup	L8
tāngsháo	N: soup spoon (ladle or small spoon)	L8

tào	M: a set of, a suit of	L9
-tíng	BF/N: hall	L10
tíngshuō	IE: I heard (that ...)	L9
wǎnfàn	N: evening meal, dinner	L12
wǎnshàng	TW: evening	L12
wèi(-)	M: polite for persons, individuals	L8
wèishénme?	MA: Why?	L12
wén	BF/N: written language/language	L9
wǒmen dàjiā	N: all of us	L8
wòfáng	N: bedroom (M: - <u>jian</u>)	L10
wǔfàn	N: noon meal, lunch	L12
xīcān	N: Western-style food (meals)	L8
xǐzǎo	VO: to take a bath	L10
xǐzǎofáng	N: bathroom	L10
xǐhuan	V/AV: to like/like to	L9
xiàcì	N: next time	L10
xià(ge)xīngqiwǔ	TW: Friday of next week	L12
xiàgeyuè	TW: next month	L10
xiàwǔ	TW: afternoon	L11
xiān	A: first (to do something)	L11
xiān ... zài ...	PATT: first ... then ...	L11
Xiānggǎng	PW: Hong Kong	L11
xiǎng	V/AV: to think about or of, to long for, to miss/to intend to	L7
xiǎng(yi)xiǎng	V: to think it over	L7
xiàozhǎng	N: head of a school	L8
xiē	NU: several, some	L10
xié	N: shoes (M: <u>shuang</u> -pair, <u>zhi</u> single)	L9
xiépù	N: shoe store	L9
xiě	V: to write	L7
xīn	SV: to be new (opposite of <u>jiù</u>)	L10
xīnwén	N: news	L8
xīngqī	N: week	L12
xīngqièr	TW: Tuesday	L12
xīngqiliù	TW: Saturday	L12
xīngqirì	TW: Sunday	L12
xīngqisān	TW: Wednesday	L12
xīngqisì	TW: Thursday	L12
xīngqiwǔ	TW: Friday	L12
xīngqiyī	TW: Monday	L12
xūyào	V/N: to need, to require/need, require- ment	L10
yào	V/AV: to want/to want to	L7
yàoǐn	SV: to be important	L8
yīgòng	MA: altogether, in all (total)	L7
yíjiàn yifú	M: a piece of clothing	L9
yìshuang kuàizi	NU-M N: a pair of chopsticks	L9
yìshuang xié	NU-M/N: a pair of shoes	L9
yítào shu	NU-M N: a set of books	L9
yítào yifú	NU-M M: a suit of clothes	L9
yifu/yishang	N: clothes	L9
yǐjīng	A: already	L12

GLOSSARY

MODULE 2

yǐzi	N: chair (M: - <u>bǎ</u>)	L10
yīnwèi	MA: because	L9
yīnggāi/yīngdāng	AV: should, ought to, have to	L8
Yīng-Hàn zìdiǎn	N: English-Chinese dictionary	L7
Yīngwén	N: English (language)	L9
yòng	V: to use, to employ	L7
yǒuming	SV: to be famous, to be well-known	L9
yǒushi	IE/VO: to be busy, occupied	L12
yǒuyòng	SV: to be useful	L7
yuánzhubǐ	N: ball-point pen (Lit. round bead bead pen)(M: - <u>zhi</u>)	L7
zài	A: again (in the future), then (to do something)	L11
zài...ne	PT: ... are in, ... are on, are	L8
zàijiàn	IE: Good-by.	L11
zǎofàn	N: breakfast	L12
zǎoshàng	TW: morning (6-11 a.m., approx.)	L12
zěnome	A/QW: how come, why	L11
zěnome?	QW: How?	L8
zhǎnlǎn	V/N: to exhibit, to put on display, to show/exhibit	L12
zhǎnlǎnhuì	N: exhibition	L12
zhāng	M: for maps, paper, tables, desks, etc.	L7
zhǎng	N: leader, monitor, commander, head	L8
zhèici	PH: this time	L8
zhèi(ge)xīngqiwū	TW: Friday of this week	L12
zhèige yuè	TW: this month	L10
zhèixiē	SP-NU: these	L10
zhēn	A: really, truly	L10
zhǐ	N: paper	L8
Zhōngcān	N: Chinese-style food (meals)	L8
zhōngfàn	N: noon meal, lunch	L12
Zhōngwén	N: Chinese (language)	L9
zhōngwǔ	TW: noon	L11
zhǒng	M: kind of, sort of, type of	L9
zhuōzi	N: table (M: - <u>zhang</u>)	L10
zìjǐ	N: self	L9
zì	N: (Chinese) characters, ideographs	L7
zìdiǎn	N: dictionary (M: <u>běn</u>)	L7
zǒu	V: to travel, to walk, to go	L11
zū	V: to rent	L10
zūqián	N: rental money	L10
zuótiān	TW: yesterday	L11
zuò	V/CV: to sit on, to ride on/by (any kind of transportation)	L11
zuò	V: to make, to do	L9
zuò mǎimai	VO: to do business	L9
zuòfàn	V/VO: to cook/to cook rice	L9

WORKBOOK INTRODUCTION

This workbook is designed to be used in conjunction with some of your homework tapes. It is intended to give you added practice, reinforcing and supplementing the lesson content of the textbook. It will also provide you with periodic and systematic reviews of the course material.

Below is the list of tapes you will receive for module 2. The list indicates whether the tape is to be used with the textbook (T) or the workbook (W).

7A (T)	9A (T)	11A (T)
7B (W)	9B (W)	11B (W)
8A (T)	10A (T)	12A (T)
8B (W)	10B (W)	12B (W)

In addition to these tapes, each lesson has a "Listening Comprehension" (LC) tape and a "Lesson Test" tape, both to be played by the teacher in class. This workbook also contains the practice sheet for the listening comprehension tape. Make sure you take this sheet to class.

Tape 7B (S1)

Homework Assignment Hand-in Sheets

Part I. Vocabulary Review: In the spaces provided, write an English translation of what you hear. (If necessary stop the tape and go back and listen again.)

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____
11. _____
12. _____
13. _____
14. _____
15. _____
16. _____
17. _____
18. _____
19. _____
20. _____

Tape 7B (S1)

Homework Assignment Hand-in Sheets

Part II. Written Responses: Story. (Answer the following questions as you listen to the tape. The numbers following some of the questions refer to multiple answers.)

1. What is Mr. LI's relationship to the speaker?

2. What is said about New York?

3. What is said about Mr. LI?

4. What is said about Mrs. LI?

5. What is said about the books she sells? (Be specific.)

6. What else does she sell?

7. What are the five kinds of the latter?

8. What does the Li family not have?

- 9&10. What did Mrs. LI do formerly? What did she specifically teach? (2)

11. What did the students use to write with? (2)

12. What two kinds of characters did she teach?

13. What is said to be very good?

14. What is said about their size?

15. What two kinds does she have?

- 16&17. What did I previously have? What is said about it and why is this so? (2)

18&19. What does the speaker have that he bought at Mrs. LI's place and what is said about them? (2)

20. _____
The first one is what? With what characters? (2)

21. _____
What is the small one? (Be specific.)

22. _____
What else had he bought at her place? What is said about it? (2)

23&24. _____
What was the cost and what is said about it? (2)

25. _____
What does the speaker not have and why? (2)

26. _____
What does the speaker not know about this item?

End of Tape 7B (S1)

Tape 8B (S1)

Homework Assignment Hand-in Sheets

Part I. Vocabulary Review: In the spaces provided, write an English translation of what you hear. (If necessary stop the tape and go back and listen again.)

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____
11. _____
12. _____
13. _____
14. _____
15. _____
16. _____
17. _____
18. _____
19. _____
20. _____

Tape 8B (S1)

Homework Assignment Hand-in Sheets

Part II. Written Responses: Story. (Answer the following questions as you listen to the tape. The numbers following some of the questions refer to multiple answers.)

1. What did the four of us do?

2. In addition to my wife, who were the other two people?

3. What was their nationality?

4. Where did we go and what did we eat? (2)

5. What is said about the food?

6. What do we eat at home and how? (2)

7. What about in Chinese restaurants? (2)

8. How many dishes did we eat?

9. Where was he from? His girl friend? (2)

10. What are they doing? Where? (2)

11. What did he have with him?

12. What did he do with it?

13. What did I say?

14. What was the news about New York schools?

15. What did he ask about this place?

16. How many did I think there were?
17. What did he know of my occupation?
18. How many teachers are in my school and how many students? (2)
19. What did he ask my wife?
20. What was the reply?
21. What did I ask him about New York?
22. How many places sold Mainland books?
23. What did I tell him I wanted to buy?
24. What did he want to do with his copy?
25. When I asked the price, what did he say? (2)
- _____

(END)

Tape 9B (S1)

Homework Assignment Hand-in Sheets

Part I. Vocabulary Review: In the spaces provided, write an English translation of what you hear. (If necessary stop the tape and go back and listen again.)

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____
11. _____
12. _____
13. _____
14. _____
15. _____
16. _____
17. _____
18. _____
19. _____
20. _____

Tape 9B (S1)

Homework Assignment Hand-in Sheets

Part II. Written Responses: Story. (Answer the following questions as you listen to the tape. The numbers following some of the questions refer to multiple answers.)

1. What was the date and occasion? (2)
2.

What did the girl friend ask?
3.

What was his reply?
4.

Where did he tell his girl friend?
5.

What did he think he would give her? (Be specific.)
6.

What did his girl friend think?
7.

What did she suggest he should give?
8.

What did he reply? (Be specific)
9.

What was the girl friend's next suggestion?
- 10/11.

What was his reaction to this? (2)
12.

What did the girl friend suggest next?
13.

What did he respond? (2)
- 14/15.

What did his girl friend tell him? What did she think? (2)
16.

What did he ask about this item?
17.

What did she say? (Be specific.)

18. What did he say? What would he buy? (Be specific.) (2)

19. _____
What did the girl friend ask?

20. _____
What did he reply? (Be specific.)

End of Tape 9B (S1)

Tape 10B (S1)

Homework Assignment Hand-in Sheets

Part I. Vocabulary Review: This part consists of 15 short sentences spoken in Chinese. In the spaces provided, write an English translation of what you hear. (Each sentence will be said twice. If necessary, stop and go back and listen again.)

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____
11. _____
12. _____
13. _____
14. _____
15. _____

Tape 10B (S1)

Homework Assignment Hand-in Sheets

Part II. Written Responses: Story. (Answer the following questions as you listen to the tape. The numbers following some of the questions refer to multiple answers.)

1. Where is my girl friend now, and what did she tell me? (2)

2. What did she not say?

3. What did she want to do?

4. In this connection, what did she ask? (2)

5. Why did I not know the answer to this?

6. What did I say I would have to do?

7. Having done this, what was his reply?

8. What did he suggest I do, and why?

9. What did my girl friend say?

- 10 She wanted two what, and why? (2)

11. What did I ask her?

12. What was her reply?

- 13 What did she not want?

14. What did she want, and why? (2)

15. She said that one what would be satisfactory, and why? (2)

Tape 11B (S1)

Homework Assignment Hand-in Sheets

Part I. Vocabulary Review: This part consists of 15 short sentences spoken in Chinese. In the spaces provided, write an English translation of what you hear. (Each sentence will be said twice. If necessary, stop and go back and listen again.)

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____
11. _____
12. _____
13. _____
14. _____
15. _____

Tape 11B (S1)

Homework Assignment Hand-in Sheets

Part II. Written Responses: Story. (Answer the following questions as you listen to the tape. The numbers following some of the questions refer to multiple answers.)

Segment 1: Questions 1 - 2

1. When did my friend come to the U.S.? 1. _____
2. What was his point of origin? 2. _____

Segment 2: Questions 3 - 6

3. When did he leave there? 3. _____
4. Where did he go first? 4. _____
5. How did he travel? 5. _____
6. When did he arrive there? 6. _____

Segment 3: Questions 7 - 9

7. Why did he go there? 7. _____
8. What relatives there are first mentioned? 8. _____
9. Who else were there? (2) (Be specific) 9. _____

Segment 4: Questions 10 - 12

10. How did he travel from this place to Shanghai? 10. _____
11. What date and time of day did he leave? (2) (Be specific) 11. _____
12. When did he arrive? (date and time) (2) (Be specific) 12. _____

Segment 5: Questions 13 - 16

13. What is said about Shanghai? 13. _____
14. How did he travel? (Be specific) 14. _____

15. When did he go aboard? 15. _____
16. When did he arrive in Ssn
Francisco? 16. _____

Segment 6: Questions 17 - 20

17. This was his first what?
(2 things) 17. _____
18. What did I ask about his
plane? 18. _____
19. What was his reply?
(Be specific) 19. _____
20. Why did he not get off at
this place? 20. _____

Segment 7: Questions 21 - 23

21. What is said about New
York? (Be specific) 21. _____
22. When does he want to go
to a Chinese Restaurant? 22. _____
23. What does he want me to do? 23. _____

Segment 8: Questions 24 - 26

24. What did he want to do in
the afternoon? (2) 24. _____
25. What did I tell him? 25. _____
26. Why was this possible? 26. _____

Segment 9: Questions 27 - 30

27. What did he ask me? 27. _____
28. What did I tell him?
(Be specific) 28. _____
29. But what? 29. _____
30. What did he say about
Beijing? 30. _____

(END OF TAPE 11B S1)

Tape 12B (S1)

Homework Assignment Hand-in Sheets

Part I. Vocabulary Review: This part consists of 12 short sentences spoken in Chinese. In the spaces provided, write an English translation of what you hear. (Each sentence will be said twice. If necessary, stop and go back and listen again.)

1. _____

2. _____

3. _____

4. _____

5. _____

6. _____

7. _____

8. _____

9. _____

10. _____

11. _____

12. _____

Tape 12B (S1)

Homework Assignment Hand-in Sheets

Part II. Written Responses: Story. (Answer the following questions as you listen to the tape. The numbers following some of the questions refer to multiple answers.)

Segment 1: Questions 1 - 2

1. When, and what day of the week, did this happen? (2) 1. _____
2. What did I do, and when? (Be specific) 2. _____

Segment 2: Questions 3 - 4

3. What else happened that day? 3. _____
4. Where was this held? 4. _____

Segment 3: Questions 5 - 6

5. Going to my destination, What did I have to do? 5. _____
6. When I got there, what had occurred? Because of what? 6. _____

Segment 4: Questions 7 - 8

7. What else had happened? 7. _____
8. What about my friend? (2) 8. _____

Segment 5: Questions 9 - 10

9. Who did I see, and where? (2) 9. _____
10. What was her manner? What did she ask? (2) 10. _____

Segment 6: Questions 11 - 12

11. Replying in the affirmative,
what did I say, and what
reason did I give? (2) 11. _____

12. What did she say?
(Be specific) 12. _____

Segment 7: Questions 13 - 14

13. What did I reply? (In full.) 13. _____

14. What did she say to this? 14. _____

Segment 8: Questions 15 - 16

15. What did I say? 15. _____

16. What did she reply? (In full.) 16. _____

Segment 9: Questions 17 - 18

17. What happened then?
(Be specific) 17. _____
18. Who were there, and what
is said about them? (2)
What about my friend? 18. _____

Segment 10: Questions 19 - 20

19. What is said of the friend?
(Be specific) 19. _____
20. What did I ask him? 20. _____

Segment 11: Questions 21 - 22

21. What was his reply? (2) 21. _____

22. Then, what did he say? 22. _____

Segment 12: Questions 23 - 24

23. I then asked about his trip 23. _____
(where and when). What else
did I ask? (Be specific) _____
24. What was his reply? 24. _____

Segment 13: Questions 25 - 26

25. What did I ask about this 25. _____
visit? _____
26. What did he say? 26. _____
(Be specific.) _____

Segment 14: Questions 27 - 28

27. To the question about this, 27. _____
what did he reply?
(Be specific.) _____
28. When I asked what kind it 28. _____
was, what did he say? _____

Segment 15: Questions 29 - 30

29. When questioned about what 29. _____
all there would be, what
did he say? _____
30. What did he ask me, and 30. _____
what did I reply? (2)
END OF TAPE (S1) _____

LESSON 7

LISTENING COMPREHENSION PRACTICE

Tape 7LC, Side 1

Part I. Multiple Choice. (Instructions on tape)

- | | | | |
|----------------|------------|------------|------------|
| 1. a. jiào | b. shì | c. xìng | d. míngzi |
| 2. a. qiānbǐ | b. fántǐzì | c. máobǐ | d. zìdiǎn |
| 3. a. háishi | b. hé | c. dōu | d. mài |
| 4. a. xiě | b. zhī | c. xué | d. yóng |
| 5. a. zhīdao | b. chū | c. xiě | d. xué |
| 6. a. shàngxué | b. yǒuyòng | c. kànshū | d. gōngzuo |
| 7. a. zhī | b. jiā | c. zhǎng | d. běn |
| 8. a. zhùzai | b. gōngzuo | c. xuéxi | d. jiāoshū |
| 9. a. piányi | b. jǐge | c. duōshao | d. zhīdao |
| 10. a. máobǐ | b. zìdiǎn | c. dìtú | d. xuéxiào |

Part II. Written Responses - Story. (Instructions on tape)

Segment 1: Questions 1 - 3

1. What do I have? (Be specific) 1. _____
2. What is said of the two? 2. _____
3. What is said about me? 3. _____

Segment 2: Questions 4 - 7

4. What are their surnames, and where are they from? 4. _____
5. Where are they living? 5. _____
6. What is said about hotels? 6. _____
7. What do the two not have? 7. _____

Segment 3: Questions 8 - 11

8. What is said about the teachers? 8. _____

LESSON 7

LISTENING COMPREHENSION PRACTICE

Tape 7LC, Side 1

9. What is said about one in particular? (Be specific) 9. _____
10. Where was she born? 10. _____
11. What do I not know about her? 11. _____

Segment 4: Questions 12 - 14

12. What does she teach? 12. _____
13. What do we have in school? 13. _____
14. What is said about the first kind? 14. _____

Segment 5: Questions 15 - 17

15. What can I do? (Be specific) 15. _____
16. What am I unable to do? 16. _____
17. What is said about the results of my efforts? 17. _____

Segment 6: Questions 18 -21

18. In the city are what? What are they called? 18. _____
19. What is said of the operators? 19. _____
20. What is said about the products they sell? 20. _____
21. What else do they sell? What do I not know? 21. _____

Segment 7: Questions 22 - 25

22. What do I not have? What is said of them? 22. _____
23. What do I want to buy? Specifically? (2) 23. _____

LESSON 7

LISTENING COMPREHENSION PRACTICE

Tape 7LC, Side 1

24. What do I have that is useful? 24. _____

25. What did I pay for it? 25. _____

Segment 8: Questions 26 - 28

26. What is said of my girl friend? (name and occupation) 26. _____

27. Where was she born? 27. _____

28. Which parent does what? 28. _____

Tape 7LC, Side 1

Part III. Written Interpretation. (Instructions on tape)

1. _____

2. _____

3. _____

4. _____

5. _____

6. _____

7. _____

8. _____

LESSON 8

LISTENING COMPREHENSION PRACTICE

Tape 8LC, Side 1

Tape 8LC(S1)

Part I. Multiple Choice. (Instructions on tape)

- | | | | |
|------------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. a. xuéxiào | b. niànshū | c. bānzhǎng | d. jiāoshū |
| 2. a. yīzhí | b. yīfèn(r) | c. yīběn | d. yīwèi |
| 3. a. rén | b. xiānsheng | c. nánrén | d. wèi |
| 4. a. yòng | b. shuō | c. xiě | d. gào song |
| 5. a. kéyì | b. yòng | c. huí | d. shì |
| 6. a. ne | b. xiànzài | c. fànguǎnr | d. kuàizi |
| 7. a. yào jīn | b. shuō huà | c. yīng gāi | d. yī kuài r |
| 8. a. xiào zhǎng | b. jiāoshū | c. shàng xué | d. kànshū |
| 9. a. xīcān | b. yào jīn | c. fàn wǎn | d. yī kuài r |
| 10. a. mài gei | b. gào shong | c. jiāo gei | d. shuō huà |

Part II. Written Responses - Story. (Instructions on tape)

Segment 1: Questions 1 - 3

- | | |
|---|----------|
| 1. In what city did Liú Déyì live? Where did he work? | 1. _____ |
| 2. What was Liú Bīn able to do? | 2. _____ |
| 3. Why was his younger brother unable to do so? | 3. _____ |

Segment 2: Questions 4 - 6

- | | |
|---|----------|
| 4. What did Liú Bīn very much want to do? | 4. _____ |
| 5. What did he ask his father every day? | 5. _____ |
| 6. What was the father's reply? | 6. _____ |

Segment 3: Questions 7 -10

- | | |
|--|----------|
| 7. What did the father say to Liú Bīn one day? | 7. _____ |
|--|----------|

LESSON 8

LISTENING COMPREHENSION PRACTICE

Tape 8LC, Side 1

8. Why was Liú Bīn unwilling to go? 8. _____
9. Who did the father say would give these to him? 9. _____
10. (Also) where could they be purchased? 10. _____

Segment 4: Questions 11 - 14

11. What was Liú Bīn's concern with regard to buying books? 11. _____
12. What was the father's reply? 12. _____
13. Whom did Liú Bīn want to go with him? 13. _____
14. This not being possible, what did Liú Bīn say? 14. _____

Segment 5: Questions 15 - 18

15. What did the father suggest on one occasion? 15. _____
16. What was Liú Bīn's question? 16. _____
17. Why was he unwilling to eat western style food? 17. _____
18. What was the father's solution to this? 18. _____

Segment 6: Questions 19 - 22

19. In front of the restaurant was what? 19. _____
20. How much did the father pay? 20. _____
21. Inside the restaurant, the father did what? 21. _____
22. What was Liú Bīn's question? 22. _____

Segment 6: Questions 23 - 26

23. Give the gist of what the paper supposedly said. 23. _____

LESSON 8

LISTENING COMPREHENSION PRACTICE

Tape 8LC, Side 1

24. After thinking about it,
what did Liú Bīn ask? 24. _____
25. What was his father's reply? 25. _____
26. Give Liú Bīn's answer to this. 26. _____

LESSON 8

LISTENING COMPREHENSION PRACTICE

Tape 8LC, Side 1

Part III. Written Interpretation. (Instructions on tape)

1. _____

2. _____

3. _____

4. _____

5. _____

6. _____

7. _____

8. _____

LESSON 8

LISTENING COMPREHENSION PRACTICE

Tape 8LC, Side 1

9.

10.

LESSON 9

LISTENING COMPREHENSION PRACTICE

Tape 9LC, Side 1

Tape 9LC(S1)

Part I. Multiple Choice. (Instructions on tape)

- | | | | |
|------------------|------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1. a. huàhuà | b. sònggei | c. yǒuming | d. huàde |
| 2. a. píjiǔ | b. dōngxi | c. máfan | d. píngzi |
| 3. a. shāndiàn | b. sònggei | c. fúzhuāng | d. xiépù |
| 4. a. bùxié | b. zuǒfàn | c. píjiǔ | d. shānshuǐ |
| 5. a. yīngdāng | b. yīnwei | c. hǎokàn | d. bùduō |
| 6. a. hǎokàn | b. yǒuming | c. máfan | d. yàoqǐn |
| 7. a. kěshì | b. bùnéng | c. yīngdāng | d. sònggei |
| 8. a. zuǒfàn | b. sònggei | c. yǒuming | d. tīngshuō |
| 9. a. tài | b. zhāng | c. shuāng | d. píng |
| 10. a. shāngdiàn | b. shípǔ | c. qīshuǐ | d. hěnduō |

Part II. Written Responses - Story. (Instructions on tape)

Segment 1: Questions 1 - 3

- | | |
|--|----------|
| 1. Where was I born? What else is said about this place? | 1. _____ |
| 2. What did my father do? | 2. _____ |
| 3. What is said about it? | 3. _____ |

Segment 2: Questions 4 - 7

- | | |
|--|----------|
| 4. What kind of place was it? | 4. _____ |
| 5. What did he sell? | 5. _____ |
| 6. Where were they made, and what were from China? (3) | 6. _____ |
| 7. What is said about buyers? | 7. _____ |

Segment 3: Questions 9 - 11

- | | |
|---|----------|
| 8. Why did my father not have much money? | 8. _____ |
|---|----------|

LESSON 9

LISTENING COMPREHENSION PRACTICE

Tape 9LC, Side 1

- 9. How much did he consume? 9. _____
- 10. What did my mother tell him? 10. _____
- 11. What was his reply to this? 11. _____

Segment 4: Questions 12 - 15

- 12. Because of our family's condition, what did my mother do? 12. _____
- 13. What was it? 13. _____
- 14. Who were the items for? 14. _____
- 15. What is said about the product she sold? 15. _____

Segment 5: Questions 16 - 18

- 16. What happened one time? (Be specific.) 16. _____
- 17. What is the first thing said about my mother? 17. _____
- 18. What two things did she do each day? (2) 18. _____

Segment 6: Questions 19 - 23

- 19. What is said about us kids? 19. _____
- 20. What about my father? 20. _____
- 21. What was the reason? What did he say? (2) 21. _____
- 22. What did my mother say? 22. _____
- 23. What is said about us kids and what did we have? 23. _____

Segment 7: Questions 24 - 27

- 24. What is said of my sister? 24. _____

LESSON 9

LISTENING COMPREHENSION PRACTICE

Tape 9LC, Side 1

25. What is said of her product?
(2) 25. _____
26. Quite a number of people did
what? 26. _____
27. New York did not have what?
Where could these be found? 27. _____

Segment 8: Questions 28 - 31

28. What did my sister do? 28. _____
29. What did my father say of
her work? 29. _____
30. What was his remark about? 30. _____
31. What did my sister say? 31. _____

LESSON 9

LISTENING COMPREHENSION PRACTICE

Tape 9LC, Side 1

Part III. Written Interpretation. (Instructions on tape)

1. _____

2. _____

3. _____

4. _____

5. _____

6. _____

7. _____

8. _____

LESSON 10

LISTENING COMPREHENSION PRACTICE

Tape 10LC, Side 1

Tape 10LC(S1)

Part I. Multiple Choice. (Instructions on tape)

- | | | | |
|----------------|--------------|------------|--------------|
| 1. a. fángjiān | b. wòfáng | c. jiājù | d. xīzǎofáng |
| 2. a. dǎi | b. xūyào | c. suàn | d. yīngdāng |
| 3. a. kètīng | b. fàntīng | c. chufáng | d. xīzǎofáng |
| 4. a. chūzū | b. fángzū | c. lái | d. fángjiān |
| 5. a. shōuqián | b. chufáng | c. xīnde | d. xīzǎo |
| 6. a. shōuqián | b. fángzū | c. zhēn | d. suàn |
| 7. a. suàn | b. cái | c. lái | d. xiē |
| 8. a. jiùde | b. xīnde | c. zū | d. chūzū |
| 9. a. dēng | b. chuáng | c. wòfáng | d. shūjiàzi |
| 10. a. gōngyù | b. xīzǎofáng | c. fàntīng | d. shōuqián |

Part II. Written Responses - Story. (Instructions on tape)

Segment 1: Questions 1 - 4

- | | |
|--|----------|
| 1. Where was my home? | 1. _____ |
| 2. What did my father do? | 2. _____ |
| 3. Where did we live, and how is it described? (2) (Be specific) | 3. _____ |
| 4. It had four what, and three what? (2) | 4. _____ |

Segment 2: Questions 5 - 9

- | | |
|--|----------|
| 5. How many are there in our family? | 5. _____ |
| 6. What is said of my two older sisters? | 6. _____ |
| 7. What did they have of their own? | 7. _____ |
| 8. Who shared another one? | 8. _____ |

LESSON 10

LISTENING COMPREHENSION PRACTICE

Tape 10LC, Side 1

9. What about little sister? (2) 9. _____

Segment 3: Questions 10 - 14

10. Where did we eat, and why? (2) 10. _____

11. What did it have in it? (2) 11. _____

12. What other room also had these? 12. _____

13. When was this latter room used? 13. _____

14. When our friends came, what happened? 14. _____

Segment 4: Questions 15 - 17

15. What did we have in the apartment? (Be specific) 15. _____

16. Where was it purchased, and by whom? (2) 16. _____

17. What happened to it? 17. _____

Segment 5: Questions 18 - 21

18. What am I doing here now? 18. _____

19. Where do I live, and how is it described? (Be specific) 19. _____

20. What three rooms are there? (3) 20. _____

21. What is said not to count? 21. _____

Segment 6: Questions 22 - 26

22. What is the rental? 22. _____

23. What is said about my wife? 23. _____

24. Why don't I like it? 24. _____

LESSON 10

LISTENING COMPREHENSION PRACTICE

Tape 10LC, Side 1

25. What do I do each day, but what don't I have? What to do it on? (3) 25. _____
26. I have a lot of what, but no what? (2) 26. _____

Segment 7: Questions 27 - 30

27. What is really bad, and why? (2) 27. _____
28. I need to do what, and why? (2) 28. _____
29. What is preventing this? 29. _____
30. What do I ask of the listener? 30. _____

LESSON 11

LISTENING COMPREHENSION PRACTICE

Tape 11LC, Side 1

Part I. Multiple Choice. (Instructions on tape)

- | | | | |
|----------------|--------------|------------|--------------|
| 1. a. qù | b. líkāi | c. cóng | d. xiān |
| 2. a. jìxù | b. dào | c. zuò | d. jìhuà |
| 3. a. zài | b. jīngguo | c. nàme | d. zǒu |
| 4. a. xiàwǔ | b. Xiānggǎng | c. dìyìcì | d. zuò qìchē |
| 5. a. zǒu | b. zuò | c. líkāi | d. zài |
| 6. a. jīngguo | b. jìhuà | c. jìxù | d. cóng |
| 7. a. qìchē | b. chuán | c. huǒchē | d. fēijī |
| 8. a. tīngshuō | b. nàme | c. duìle | d. zěnme |
| 9. a. cóng | b. shíhou | c. qìchē | d. jīngguo |
| 10. a. tán | b. jìxù | c. zhōngwǔ | d. líkāi |

Part II. Written Responses - Story. (Instructions on tape)

Segment 1: Questions 1 - 2

- | | |
|---|----------|
| 1. <u>When</u> and <u>how</u> am I going? (2) | 1. _____ |
| 2. Why is it a nuisance going from here? | 2. _____ |

Segment 2: Questions 3 - 4

- | | |
|---|----------|
| 3. What two ways are there to get from here to San Francisco? (2) | 3. _____ |
| 4. What types of transportation are not available? (2) | 4. _____ |

Segment 3: Questions 5 - 6

- | | |
|--|----------|
| 5. <u>How</u> do I intend going, and <u>why</u> go this way? (2) | 5. _____ |
| 6. What will this cost me? (Be specific.) | 6. _____ |

LESSON 11

LISTENING COMPREHENSION PRACTICE

Tape 11LC, Side 1

Segment 8: Questions 19 - 20

19. Who will not go, and why? (2) 19. _____
20. When we go, what will happen? 20. _____

Segment 9: Questions 21 - 22

21. Where is this person now? 21. _____
When did this person go
there? (2)
22. What is this person doing 22. _____
there? When and what also
is planned? (3)

Segment 10: Questions 23 - 24

23. Who came from where and 23. _____
when? (3)
24. Who told him what? (2) 24. _____

Segment 11: Questions 25 - 27

25. What did he come to ask me? 25. _____
26. What did I tell him? 26. _____
27. What else did he ask me? 27. _____

Segment 12: Questions 28 - 30

28. What did I tell him? (2) 28. _____
29. What did the man say further? 29. _____
(Be specific)
30. What did I think we should 30. _____
do? (Be specific)

Tape 11LC, Side 1

Part III. Written Interpretation. (Instructions on tape)

1. _____

2. _____

3. _____

4. _____

5. _____

6. _____

LESSON 12

LISTENING COMPREHENSION PRACTICE

Tape 12LC, Side 1

Part I. Multiple Choice. (Instructions on tape)

- | | | | |
|----------------|-------------|--------------|-------------|
| 1. a. líkai | b. tán | c. jiē | d. zǒu |
| 2. a. máfan | b. jìhuà | c. xiān | d. máng |
| 3. a. háiméi | b. yǐjīng | c. búguò | d. bànshì |
| 4. a. míngtiān | b. hòutiān | c. dàhòutiān | d. qiántiān |
| 5. a. suóyi | b. kěshi | c. bùzhǐshi | d. yǒushi |
| 6. a. búbì | b. yīngdāng | c. búguò | d. méiyòng |
| 7. a. qīng | b. bàn | c. zǒu | d. dài |
| 8. a. yǐjīng | b. hái méi | c. suóyi | d. xiànzài |

Part II. Written Responses - Story. (Instructions on tape)

Segment 1: Question 1

1. When did I see the man,
and where?

1. _____

Segment 2: Question 2

2. Why did I at first not
know his nationality?

2. _____

Segment 3: Questions 3 - 4

3. Where specifically was
he, and what was he
doing? (2)

3. _____

4. How did I know he was a
stranger?

4. _____

Segment 4: Question 5

5. What was his manner when
he spoke to me? What did
he ask?

5. _____

LESSON 12

LISTENING COMPREHENSION PRACTICE

Tape 12LC, Side 1

Segment 5: Questions 6 - 7

- 6. What did he say in regard to his visit here? 6. _____
- 7. What was he inquiring about? 7. _____

Segment 6: Questions 8 - 9

- 8. Why did I ask what kind it was? 8. _____
- 9. What kind did he say it was? 9. _____

Segment 7: Questions 10 - 11

- 10. Where was it being held? (Be specific) 10. _____
- 11. When he asked "which one," what did I offer to do? 11. _____

Segment 8: Questions 12 - 14

- 12. Give the gist of his reply? (Be as specific as possible) 12. _____

- 13. What did I say about today? What did I want to do first? 13. _____

- 14. How would we go? 14. _____

Segment 9: Questions 15 - 16

- 15. What did he ask me to do, and what would he do? (2) 15. _____

- 16. What did I say I liked to do? 16. _____

LESSON 12

LISTENING COMPREHENSION PRACTICE

Tape 12LC, Side 1

Segment 10: Questions 17 - 19

17. In answer to my question, what did he say? (Be specific) 17. _____

18. Where was he from? How long had he been in the United States? 18. _____

19. Where was he living? 19. _____

Segment 11: Questions 20 - 22

20. What did I ask him? 20. _____

21. What was his reply? (Be specific) 21. _____

22. What did they sell there? Because of this, he wanted to do what? (2) 22. _____

Segment 12: Questions 23 - 24

23. What was my question about this place? 23. _____

24. Replying in the negative, what did he say? (In full) 24. _____

Segment 13: Questions 25 - 26

25. What time of day was it then? 25. _____

26. What did I ask him? What was his reply? (2) 26. _____

Segment 14: Questions 27 - 29

27. What was there "here" and what was in it? What did I suggest? (Be specific) 27. _____

LESSON 12

LISTENING COMPREHENSION PRACTICE

Tape 12LC, Side 1

28. What did he say he had given me?

28. _____

29. Agreeing to my suggestion, what did he want to do?

29. _____

Segment 15: Question 30

30. What did I say? Where are we now?

30. _____

Tape 12LC, Side 1

Part III. Written Interpretation. (Instructions on tape)

1. _____

2. _____

3. _____

4. _____

5. _____

6. _____
